MOMENTUM®

BY GRAND DESIGN RV

LUXURY FIFTH WHEEL TOY HAULER

OWNER'S MANUAL

Includes M-CLASS & G-CLASS models

This page is intentionally blank.

Welcome to the Grand Design RV family!

THANK YOU for purchasing a Grand Design recreational vehicle to enjoy the adventure, leisure, and fun of the RV lifestyle. Your new RV has been designed and built to Grand Design's highest quality and safety standards. To keep you and your family safe, our products meet or exceed all applicable state and federal regulations, standards and requirements as well as those of the *Recreational Vehicle Industry Association*.

The Grand Design RV Team and our Dealer Partners pledge to always do our absolute best to provide you with a positive ownership experience as you pursue all of the exciting opportunities this "Grand" lifestyle has to offer.

Please thoroughly read and understand the content of this Owner's Manual and the various component manufacturer manuals included with your RV, paying special attention to any safety precautions (*Dangers, Cautions, Warnings and Notices*). Before camping, learn how to properly operate and maintain all of your recreational vehicle's appliances, components, and systems. Familiarize yourself and your family with the safety features built into your RV, and the actions and steps necessary to ensure safe camping.

Grand Design RV's *Limited Base Warranty* and *Limited Structural Warranty* are printed in the *Fifth Wheel/Travel Trailer Warranty and Service Guide* found in your Owner Information Package. Please read them carefully to fully understand the duration and extent of your coverage as well as the various exclusions and limitations that may apply. Our component suppliers may also provide additional warranties that extend coverage beyond our *Limited Base Warranty*. Please be sure to read all component warranty information found in your Owner Information Package and submit any required registration forms. ***Failure to perform required maintenance could void your warranty.*** Know that some ongoing maintenance is required and must be performed at specified intervals for your warranty to remain in effect.

All of us at Grand Design RV and your Grand Design Dealer THANK YOU again for your purchase. We wish you many safe and happy journeys in your new RV and a lifetime of fond memories.

This page is intentionally blank.

Fifth Wheel Owner's Manual

Table of Contents

Introduction . . . 1
Reporting Safety Defects . . . 6
Service & Warranty . . . 7
Component Supplier Contact Information . . . 14
Component Manufacturer Warranty Information . . . 16
Occupant Safety . . . 19
Pre-Travel Information . . . 41
OneControl® Touch Panel . . . 58
Towing & Leveling . . . 59
Electrical Systems . . . 99
Plumbing Systems . . . 115
Nautilus P4 Manual . . . 137
Propane System . . . 153
Appliances . . . 161
Electronics . . . 165
Heating & Cooling . . . 169
Slideout Systems . . . 178
Furniture . . . 188
Fuel Station . . . 190
Garage . . . 194
Interior Care . . . 205
Exterior Care . . . 211
Maintenance . . . 219
Required Maintenance Schedule . . . 220
Basic Troubleshooting . . . 222
Glossary . . . 235
Maintenance Record . . . 248

This page is intentionally blank.

Introduction

About This Manual

You are responsible for the safe operation and use of your recreation vehicle (RV). This manual is designed to guide you through the normal operation, safety, care, and maintenance of your RV. The procedures outlined are typical for normal operating conditions. We include tips to help you enjoy the RV lifestyle; however, this guide is not intended to teach you how, or where, to camp.

There is nothing in this manual that creates any warranty, expressed or implied. Information in this manual is not meant to in any way supplement, modify, or alter the terms and conditions of the Limited Base Warranty, Limited Structural Warranty, or any component manufacturer warranties.

The information in this manual is accurate at the time of publication but is subject to change without notice. Due to ongoing upgrades and improvements, some photographs, diagrams, components, or systems described may not represent what is actually in your RV.

Grand Design RV Customer Service Contact Information

If you have any questions, concerns, or require assistance regarding any aspect of your RV, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

Contact Information:

Website: www.**gdrv**.com
Email: **customerservice@gdrv**.com

Phone: (574) 825-9679
Fax: (574) 825-9249

Address: Customer Service
Grand Design RV
11356 County Road 2
Middlebury, IN 46540

Owner Information Package

This manual and the owner information package should be considered a permanent part of the RV.

If the RV is sold, both of these should remain with the RV for the next owner.

Owner Information Package

The Owner Information Package contains the manual and registration instructions for various individual components of your new Momentum Fifth Wheel (FW).

- It is critical that you register and activate each component warranty within the prescribed time limits to avoid loss of warranty coverage.
  - **Some manufacturers require online registration through their company website.**

  *See **page 14**, Component Supplier Contact Information.*

- Some component manufacturers offer warranties beyond the Grand Design Limited Base and Structural Warranties.
- Other components are warranted separately and exclusively by the individual component manufacturer, and are therefore excluded from our Limited Base and Structural Warranties.
- **BEFORE using your RV, it is important that you read and understand the information in this manual and your Owner Information Package. *Some component manuals are ONLY available on the manufacturer's website.***

Manufacturing Certification

All Grand Design RV fifth wheels and travel trailers are built to meet or exceed the thorough safety and manufacturing codes, standards, and regulations of the Recreational Vehicle Industry Association (RVIA).

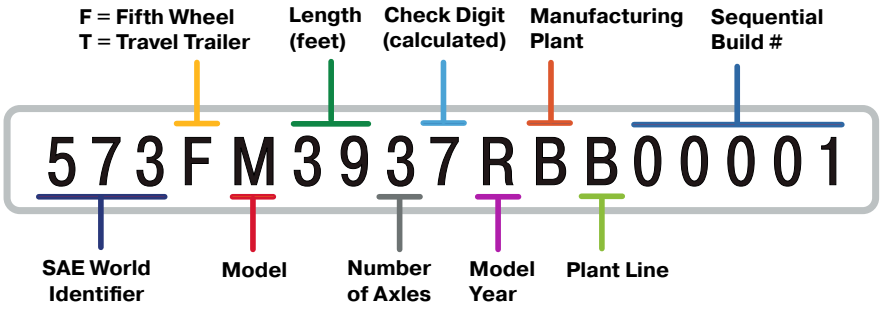
- Both RVIA and Transport Canada conduct frequent random audits to confirm that our RVs are manufactured to U.S. (RVIA) and Canadian (CSA) standards.
- The RVIA or CSA Group label found on the sidewall next to the entry door certifies that your RV has been constructed to these exacting codes and standards.
- RVs built for sale in Canada may differ to conform to Canadian codes.

This NOTE symbol is used to identify special attention items, like useful tips, reminders or maintenance items.

Vehicle Identification Number

The unique 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) for your RV is stamped on a metal tag permanently attached to the Pin Box. It is also listed on the Federal Certification label.

A breakdown of a typical Grand Design RV VIN is shown in the example below:



SAE World Identifier:

573 — Grand Design RV

Make / Model:

M — Momentum
S — Solitude / Influence
R — Reflection
E — Imagine
T — Transcend

Length:

The number listed falls within a predetermined, specified grouping that does NOT indicate the actual measured length of your RV.

Model Year:

N — 2022
P — 2023
R — 2024
S — 2025
T — 2026

The last 8 digits of the VIN number are also the RV's serial number.
For the example shown, the serial number is RBB00001.

Various safety and information labels are attached to surfaces both inside and outside your RV.

These labels are permanent and should not be removed or relocated for any reason.

Safety Precautions

Nothing is more important than the personal safety of you, your family and others. Safety encompasses several areas related to the RV experience. This includes driving/towing safety, occupant safety, operational safety, environmental safety, and more. Any time you are dealing with carbon monoxide producing appliances, propane gas, electricity and other hazards it is critical that safety become your number one priority in and around your recreational vehicle.

The Safety Alert Symbol is used to alert you to potential personal injury hazards. It is imperative that you read, understand and abide by these safety alerts and messages to avoid possible personal injury or death.

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE is used to address practices not related to physical injury.

This applies to hazardous situations involving property damage only.

Additional Terminology Used

[Customer Supplied] This denotes aftermarket items not installed or included by Grand Design RV. Items noted as “customer supplied” are not covered by the Limited Base and Structural Warranties. The inclusion of items noted as “customer supplied” does not imply or suggest the availability, application sustainability, or inclusion for any specific unit.

[If so equipped] This denotes items that may be installed by Grand Design on particular RVs. Additionally, some items noted as “if so equipped” can only be included during the manufacturing phase and cannot be added at a later date. The inclusion of items noted as “if so equipped” does not imply or suggest the availability, application sustainability, or inclusion for any specific unit.

[Optional] This denotes items that may be an option on all or particular models. Additionally, some optional items can only be included during the manufacturing phase and cannot be added at a later date. The inclusion of optional items does not imply or suggest the availability, application sustainability or inclusion for any specific unit.

Reporting Safety Defects

In the United States

If you believe your vehicle has a defect, that could cause an accident, injury or death, you should immediately inform the **National Highway Traffic Safety Administration** (NHTSA), and notifying Grand Design RV.

If the NHTSA receives similar complaints, they may open an investigation. If they determine that a safety defect exists in other vehicles, a recall and remedy campaign may be ordered. The NHTSA does not become involved in individual cases between you, your dealer, or Grand Design RV.

To contact the **NHTSA**,

Website:	www.**nhtsa.**gov
Address:	NHTSA Headquarters Attn: Administrator 1200 New Jersey Avenue,SE Washington DC 20590
Toll-free Vehicle Safety Hotline:	1-888-327-4236
TTY:	1-800-424-9153

Additional motor vehicle safety information is available online at www.**nhtsa.**gov

In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect, which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform **Transport Canada's Defect Investigations & Recalls Division**, and Grand Design RV.

To contact **Transport Canada**,

Website:	www.**tc.gc.ca**
Address:	Transport Canada Defect Investigations & Recalls Division 330 Sparks Street Ottawa ON K1A 0N5 Canada
Toll-free in Canada:	1-800-333-0510

If calling internationally,
or from the Gatineau-Ottawa area: 1-819-994-3328

Service & Warranty

Dealer's Responsibilities

When you buy your new RV, at the time of purchase, your dealer is expected to:

1. **DELIVER your RV in the best condition possible.**

   Your RV must pass the dealer's Pre-Delivery Inspection (PDI). This inspection tests all systems and components.

2. PROVIDE an orientation to familiarize you with how to operate all systems and components of your new RV.

3. REVIEW with you, and explain the provisions of the *Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty.*

4. SEND your completed *Warranty Registration and New Vehicle PDI Check List* to Grand Design RV.

   - ***Your registration form is required within 30 days of the delivery date to activate your warranty coverage.***

5. ENSURE that you receive a complete Owner Information Package. Assist you with all component manufacturer warranty registrations (ie, locating the model and serial numbers of components as needed).

6. EXPLAIN how to obtain local and out-of-town service for your RV, and its (separately warranted) components, including repairs NOT under warranty.

7. SERVICE all Grand Design RV products.

The Limited Base Warranty and the Limited Structural Warranty are activated *only AFTER* Grand Design RV receives a completed (*signed & dated*) warranty registration form from your dealer.

Failure to contact Grand Design RV Customer Support, unauthorized or improper warranty repairs, or not returning requested original parts may result in loss of reimbursement and/or loss of warranty.

Owner's Responsibilities

As the owner, you are responsible for the regular care and maintenance of your RV in accordance with this manual and the component manufacturer's instructions.

- it is also your responsibility and obligation to return the RV to an authorized dealer for any warranty repairs and service that may be required.
- Proper maintenance will help avoid situations where the Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty will not cover items due to neglect.
- Your dealer is responsible for proper service prior to delivery, and has a continued interest in your satisfaction.
    - We recommend warranty and maintenance services be performed by *your* Grand Design RV dealer.
- it is important to protect yourself and others with insurance coverage for your RV. Your insurance agent can assist you in obtaining the appropriate insurance coverage for personal liability, theft, collision, property damage, etc.

Obtaining Warranty Service

Warranty service must be obtained:

- WITHIN a reasonable time after the discovery of a defect, *and*
- BEFORE the applicable warranty period expires.

To help your dealer provide you the best level of service, please do the following:

Call ahead

It is best to have your service performed several weeks before you plan to use your RV. Your dealer may need some time to get you in their schedule. Most service departments are the busiest on Mondays, Fridays and before holidays.

Be prepared

Keep your warranty and service history paperwork available. Past repairs and maintenance records may help the service technician diagnose a current issue.

Make a list

Provide the dealer a prioritized list of all repairs needed. If you need your RV returned by a specific date, discuss this with the dealer's service management. A second appointment may be required to complete lower priority list items or if parts need to be ordered.

While waiting

If possible, drop off your RV. Usually, customers cannot watch as repair work is performed. A shop's insurance may even require that customers not be allowed in the service area.

Inspect the work performed

Inspect all repairs thoroughly. Notify the dealer's service manager of any dissatisfaction right away.

- If you cannot immediately return your RV for repair, make an appointment to return as soon as possible.
- If a problem re-occurs after leaving the dealership, contact the dealer's service manager *and* Grand Design RV Customer Support, to quickly resolve the issue.

Please have the following available when you call:

1. Your name, location and phone number where you can be reached
2. Your RV's 17-digit VIN
3. Date of purchase
4. Contact information for the RV repair facility or dealer
5. Detailed description of the concern
6. If applicable, the component description, serial and model numbers

Promptly report any issue with an RV repair to the management where the work was done. All repair businesses require notification of problems within a specified time limit. Please familiarize yourself with the RV dealer or repair center's policies.

Obtaining Emergency Warranty Repair

A roadside emergency can happen at any time, whether your RV is new or old. If you are traveling, using the following guidelines can help get you back on the road faster.

1. To find the nearest authorized repa*i*r center, ***go to our website:*** www.**gdrv**.com.
   - ***CLICK on Shopping*** at the ***TOP*** of the page, *then*
   - ***CLICK*** on ***Find Your Local Dealer***.
2. If there is not an *authorized dealer* near your location, try the following to find a repair facility:
   - Ask the campground staff for referrals.
   - Search on the Internet,
   - Check the local telephone book/yellow pages.
   - Contact your dealer, *or*
   - Grand Design RV Customer Support.
3. **When you find an authorized dealer or repair facility:**

   a. CALL the RV repair facility to discuss your situation and make an appointment.
   - ASK how their billing will be handled.
   - They may choose to bill Grand Design RV directly; if not, you are expected to pay them.

   b. Have the RV repair facility inspect your RV.
   - *BEFORE any work is performed* either the repair facility or you ***must*** call Grand Design RV Customer Support to discuss applicable warranty coverage.

   c. Grand Design RV Customer Support will issue an authorization number upon warranty repair approval and advise if any original parts must be returned.

   d. The repair center should only begin work on your RV AFTER the authorization number has been issued.

   e. FOR REIMBURSEMENT: You or the RV repair facility ***must*** send a copy of your Itemized Repair Bill, ***and***
   - RETURN all requested parts to Grand Design RV by UPS (regular ground, freight pre-paid) ***within 60-days of the completed repair date.***
   - *TO EXPEDITE PROCESSING YOUR WARRANTY CLAIM:* In addition to your Itemized Repair Bill, please include your Name, Address, Phone Number, the RV's 17-digit VIN, and your Authorization Number.
   - *If returning parts*, include a copy of your freight bill.

f. **INSPECT the completed repair work *thoroughly.***

- *Make sure you are satisfied with the repair BEFORE you pay or leave the premises.*
- *If you are not satisfied,* immediately communicate any issues to the RV repair facility's management.

Obtaining emergency repair assistance on a weekend or after business hours

- *If an authorized Grand Design RV dealer is NOT located nearby,* CONTACT your selling dealer for assistance.
- If your dealer is closed, check with the campground staff, search the Internet, or telephone book/yellow pages to find a local RV repair facility.
- Have the item repaired and contact Grand Design RV Customer Support immediately the following business day.

Replacement Parts

Replacement WARRANTY parts are ONLY distributed through *authorized* Grand Design RV dealers and service centers.

- If an original part is no longer available, Grand Design RV or your dealer will try to provide an approved substitute.
- *Also see* our website: www.**gdrv**.com
  Owners > Owner Support Archive > Parts Lookup

Aftermarket Installations & Alterations

Aftermarket installations or alterations to your RV's original equipment as distributed by Grand Design RV are NOT covered by the Limited Base and Structural Warranties. The special body company, assembler, equipment installer, or up-fitter is solely responsible for warranties on the body or equipment and any alterations (or any effect of the alterations) to any of the parts, components, systems, or assemblies installed by Grand Design RV.

Grand Design RV is not responsible for the safety or quality of design features, materials, or workmanship of any alterations by such suppliers.

Updating Your Contact Information

- **Grand Design RV requests that you please notify us *in writing* of any change in:**
  - **Address,**
  - **Ownership, or**
  - **if your RV is ever stolen or totaled.**
- ***Please remember to contact us if you sell your RV or if you have purchased a previously owned (used) Grand Design RV and are NOT the original owner*.**

Federal law requires that we keep a record of all Grand Design RV owners in order to reach you promptly in the event of a recall or a customer notification letter. Please help us keep your contact information up to date.

To update your contact information,

Email: **registration@gdrv.com**

or Write: Grand Design RV
11356 County Road 2
Middlebury, IN 46540

If you have any questions, please contact Grand Design RV Customer Support at (574) 825-9679.

Grand Design RV Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty

The Grand Design RV *Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty* are printed in the ***Grand Design RV Fifth Wheel / Travel Trailer Warranty and Service Guide.***

Pictured above, the Grand Design RV Fifth Wheel / Travel Trailer Warranty & Service Guide is found in your Owner Information Package

*Scan the **QR Code**, above, with your tablet or smartphone for a digital version of our Warranty & Service Guide.*

Component Supplier Contact Information

All component suppliers listed are correct at the time of printing. Grand Design RV may change components at their discretion. Please contact GDRV Customer Support with any questions.

Component	Brand	Supplier Website	Phone Number
Air Conditioner w/Heat Pump	Coleman Mach	airxcel.com	(423) 775-2131
Air Conditioner	Coleman Mach	airxcel.com	(423) 775-2131
Automatic Transfer Switch	Southwire	rvpower.southwire.com	(800) 780-4324
Awnings / Awning Slide Toppers	Solara/ Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Awning - Rear	Thule / Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Axles / ABS (Tow Assist)	Dexter Axle	dexteraxle.com	(574) 295-7888
Baggage Doors	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Bed-Lift System	Happijac	happijac.com	(801) 544-2585
Central Vacuum	InterVac	intervacdesign.com	(888) 499-1925
Combination CO / LP Alarm	Safe-T-Alert	mtiindustries.com	(800) 383-0269
Converter - 55 Amp	WFCO (Cheng)	wfcotech.com	(877) 294-8997
Entry Doors	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Entry Steps	MORryde	morryde.com	(574) 293-1581
Entry Steps	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Fireplace	Innoflame	davecarter.com	(574) 642-0627
Frame	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Fuel Pump / Fuel Tank	ECI Fuel Systems	vectorperformance.com	(877) 685-8602
Furnace	Suburban	airxcel.com	(423) 775-2131
Furniture • Seating	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Generator • Gasoline	NPS	NPSrvpower.com	(866) 407-1727
Graphics	BGS	burlingtongraphics.com	(262) 554-8808
Inverter	WFCO (Cheng)	wfcotech.com	(877) 294-8997
Leveling System	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Load Center	WFCO (Cheng)	wfcotech.com	(877) 294-8997
Mattress(es)	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Microwave	Insignia	irvtechnologies.com	(574) 361-9787
Microwave	Furrion	furrion.com	(888) 354-5792
Microwave	LG	irvtechnologies.com	(574) 970-8349
Nautilus Panel	B & B Molders	bandbmolders.com	(574) 259-7838
OneControl® Touch Panel	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Patio Rail Kit	MORryde	morryde.com	(574) 293-1581
Patio Rail Kit *G-Class	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900

Component	Brand	Supplier Website	Phone Number
Pin Box	MORryde	morryde.com	(574) 293-1581
Pin Box * ***G-Class***	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Ramp Door, Zero G	MORryde	morryde.com	(574) 293-1581
Ramp Door	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Ramp Door Steps	MORryde	morryde.com	(574) 293-1581
Range Top / Oven Combo	Insignia	irvtechnologies.com	(574) 361-9787
Range Top / Oven Combo	Suburban	airxcel.com	(423) 775-2131
Refrigerator - 12V	Norcold	thetford.com	(800) 543-1219
Roof Membrane	Alpha Systems	alphallc.us	(800) 462-4698
Roof Vent	MaxxFan	airxcel.com	(423) 775-2131
Slideout System - Hydraulic	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Slideout System * ***G-Class*** - Electric Through Frame	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900
Solar Prep / Solar System	Future Solutions	fsi-sales.com	(574) 262-3688
Speakers (Premium)	Rockford Fosgate	teamprogressive.com	(616) 878-3500
Stereo (Premium)	Rockford Fosgate	teamprogressive.com	(616) 878-3500
Suspension System	MORryde	morryde.com	(574) 293-1581
Thermostat	Coleman Mach	airxcel.com	(423) 775-2131
Televisions	TCL	tclusa.com	(877) 300-8837
Tires	Cooper	lionsheadtireandwheel.com	(574) 533-6169
Toilet	Thetford	thetford.com	(800) 543-1219
TV Antenna	Winegard Company	winegard.com	(800) 288-8094
Water Heater, Tankless	Furrion	furrion.com	(888) 354-5792
Water Pump	Seaflo	rangerdistribution.com	(574) 891-4994
Wi-Fi Router	Travlfi Journey XTR	travlfi.com	(800) 960-6934
Windows	Lippert	lci.com	(574) 537-8900

Component Manufacturer Warranty Information

Each OEM component equipped on your Momentum FW carries their own manufacturer warranty. Details can be found on the individual company websites or by contacting them buy phone. Warranty information is accurate at time of printing but is subject to change at any time per the manufacturer. *See* ***page 14-15***, *Component Supplier Contact Information*.

Component	Brand	Manufacturer Warranty
Air Conditioner w/Heat Pump	Coleman Mach	Two year limited warranty
Air Conditioner	Coleman Mach	Two year limited warranty
Automatic Transfer Switch	Southwire	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Awnings / Awning Slide Toppers	Solara / Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Awning - Rear	Thule / Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Axles / ABS (Tow Assist)	Dexter Axle	Five year limited warranty.
Baggage Doors	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Bed-Lift System	Happijac	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Central Vacuum	InterVac	Six year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Combination CO / LP Alarm	Safe-T-Alert	One year limited warranty
Converter - 55 Amp	WFCO	Two year limited warranty
Entry Doors	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Entry Steps	MORryde	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Entry Steps	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Fireplace	Innoflame	One year limited warranty
Frame	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Fuel Pump / Fuel Tank	ECI Fuel Systems	Two year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Furnace	Suburban	Two year limited warranty
Furniture • Seating	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Generator • Gasoline	NPS	Two year limited warranty
Graphics	BGS	Five year limited warranty
Inverter	WFCO (Cheng)	Two year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Leveling System	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Load Center	WFCO	Two year limited warranty
Mattress(es)	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Microwave	Insignia	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Microwave	Furrion	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Microwave	LG	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Nautilus Panel	B & B Molders	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
OneControl® Touch Panel	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Patio Rail Kit	MORryde	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Patio Rail Kit **** G-Class***	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.

Component	Brand	Manufacturer Warranty
Pin Box	MORryde	One year limited warranty
Pin Box * ***G-Class***	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Ramp Door, Zero G	MORryde	One year limited warranty
Ramp Door	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Ramp Door Steps	MORryde	One year limited warranty
Range Top / Oven Combo	Insignia	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Range Top / Oven Combo	Suburban	One year limited warranty
Refrigerator - 2V	Norcold	Two year limited warranty
Roof Membrane	Alpha Systems	Limited lifetime warranty.
Roof Vent	MaxxFan	Two year limited warranty
Slideout System - Hydraulic	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Slideout System * ***G-Class*** - Electric Through Frame	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Solar Prep / Solar System	Future Solutions	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Speakers (Premium)	Rockford Fosgate	Two year limited warranty
Stereo (Premium)	Rockford Fosgate	Two year limited warranty
Suspension System	MORryde	Two year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Televisions	TCL	One year limited warranty
Thermostat	Coleman Mach	Two year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Tires	Cooper	No fault 12-month limited warranty from the date of purchase. Five year limited warranty from the tire manufacture date.
Toilet	Thetford	One year limited warranty
TV Antenna	Winegard Company	Two year limited warranty, Parts. One year limited warranty, Labor.
Water Heater, Tankless	Furrion	Two year limited warranty from date of purchase.
Water Pump	Seaflo	One year limited warranty.
Wi-Fi Router	Travlfi Journey XTR	One year limited warranty.
Windows	Lippert	One year limited warranty from date of purchase.

This page is intentionally blank.

Occupant Safety

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel is designed with comfort and safety as a priority. This RV meets or exceeds the safety standards and applicable codes in effect at the time it is built. All required safety items are carefully installed to protect you and the occupants of your RV.

Family Safety Plan

Develop a *Family Safety Plan* to use in case of an emergency or severe weather condition. Practice it with your entire family, especially children.

- Before camping, please review and understand the locations of all doors, emergency exit windows, and safety equipment inside your RV.
- Teach everyone what the RV safety alarm signals mean and how to be prepared to leave the RV, by themselves if necessary.
- Draw a floor plan of your RV and find two ways to exit. There should be at least one way to get out of your RV without opening the door.
- Teach everyone how to *check doors* (and *not* to open them if they are **hot**). Also teach everyone to *stay low* to try to avoid breathing smoke, fumes or gases.
- Decide on a meeting place a safe distance from your RV. Make sure everyone understands to gather and wait there, in case family members are separated from one another in an emergency.
- Make sure everyone knows where to go to call the fire department or 911 from outside the RV.
- Conduct safety drills at least every six months.
  - Make sure everyone, guests included, knows how to evacuate the RV safely.
- Practice exiting the RV blindfolded; in a real fire situation, thick black smoke can make it impossible to see.
- Ask an out-of-state relative or friend to serve as your *family contact*. Make sure everyone knows the contact person's name, address, phone number and email.

For additional safety precautions, Consult your local fire dept.

⚠WARNING

During severe weather conditions, move indoors to a place of safety or shelter as directed by campground or other appropriate authorities.

- AVOID trees or power lines that could fall on your vehicle.
- The safest place during severe weather conditions is inside a basement or storm shelter, not an RV or tow vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Be aware of the **Heat Index** if camping during hot weather.

Keep HYDRATED, and try to stay indoors in an AIR CONDITIONED area during a high Heat Index Warning.

Pet Safety

Emergency shelters could refuse to admit pets due to health or space reasons. The survival of a beloved pet often depends on the careful plans their owner has made in advance.

- Prepare an emergency plan for pets that includes a **3-day supply** (*at least*) of dry food and fresh water.

Emergency Weather Planning

Weather conditions can change with little, or even no warning. While camping, always be prepared for the possibility of severe weather. Thunderstorms, hail, flooding, hurricanes, tornadoes, earthquakes, etc. can threaten your safety and damage your tow vehicle or RV.

Local radio and TV stations normally broadcast weather conditions and warnings as they occur. Research other methods of learning about severe weather conditions and how to deal with them. You may want to consider investing in a weather radio. Weather radios offer 24 hour-a-day VHF broadcasts of weather observations and forecasts directly from the US National Weather Service (NWS).

The frequencies used by the US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) weather radio stations are 162.400, 162.425, 162.450, 162.475, 162.500, 162.525, or 162.550 megahertz or visit their website www.**noaa.gov**

Repairing severe weather damage

If your RV (or tow vehicle) is damaged due to severe weather, BEFORE scheduling any repair work:

- **CALL your insurance company to *report your claim as soon as possible***.

Please familiarize yourself with the following weather terms:

Warning - indicates that a particular weather hazard is either imminent or has been reported.

Move to a safe location immediately. Take action to protect life and property. The type of hazard is named in the type of warning (tornado warning, blizzard warning, etc.).

Watch - indicates that a particular weather hazard is possible and that conditions are favorable for its occurrence.

A watch is a time for preparation, planning, and increased awareness. Stay alert for changing weather, listen for further information and think about what to do if the danger materializes.

Fire Safety

Please AVOID the three (3) most common Fire Safety issues:
Using Flammable Solvents/Cleaning Fluids,
Leaving Children Unattended, and Smoking In Bed.

In a fire emergency, EVACUATE the RV *first*, *then* call 911 from a safe location.

- **In a fire emergency,** execute your *Family Safety Plan*.
- Make sure everyone knows to ***Stop, Drop & Roll*** if their clothes catch fire.
  - **Stop** in place, do not run.
  - **Drop** to the ground.
  - **Roll** back and forth, with hands shielding face from the fire.
- Supervise children around any open flame, especially grills, and campfires.
- Learn and teach safe fire practices. Build campfires away from nearby trees or bushes.
- Maintain at least a three-foot (3') CLEAR AREA around grills, campfires and tents, *that is free of pine needles, dry grass, leaves, etc*.
- ALWAYS have a way to quickly and completely extinguish a campfire *ready in advance*. NEVER leave a fire burning unattended, not even a cigarette.
- Teach family members how to use the fire extinguisher and replace it as recommended.
- DO NOT store combustible materials in closed areas or near a heat source.
- DO NOT use water to put out a grease fire. Water can spread some types of fire and create an electrocution hazard during an electrical fire.
- ALWAYS call the Fire Department, No matter how small the fire.

More information on firefighting can be found at the National Fire Protection Association website (www.**nfpa.org**).

NOTIFY Grand Design RV Immediately

if you feel that product failure resulted in a fire.

Call GDRV Customer Service at **(574) 825-8000** for approval BEFORE the RV is entered, moved or repaired, or any debris is cleaned/removed.

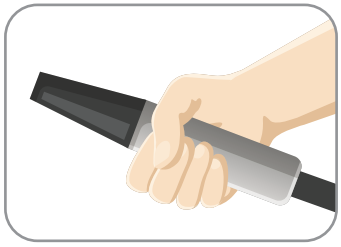
Failure to notify GDRV could result in the loss of coverage.

⚠ CAUTION

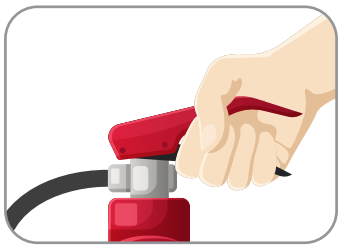
AVOID inhaling the dry chemical agent in the fire extinguisher. It is not toxic but may cause skin irritation.

In case of contact:
FLUSH the affected area with clean, cool water.
If irritations persists, contact a physician immediately.

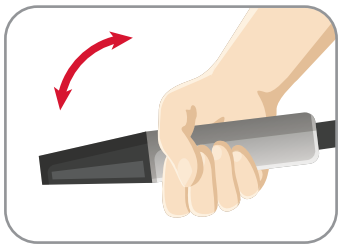
PULL the pin



AIM the nozzle



SQUEEZE the lever



SWEEP from side-to-side

Fire Extinguisher

A fire can spread very fast. BEFORE using the fire extinguisher, remember that **safe escape** is the most important part of any fire response plan. ***If there is a fire in or around your RV*:**

- **EVACUATING all occupants from the RV safely, must be your number one (#1) priority.**

A dry chemical, Class B /Class C type fire extinguisher is located near the entry door of your RV. The portable fire extinguisher can be used to put out small fires or contain one until the fire department arrives. Portable extinguishers do have limitations.

Household fire extinguishers are classified into four types by Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

Rating	Intended Use
Type A	For use on fires involving combustible materials such as wood, cloth and paper.
Type B	For use on flammable liquid fires, including kitchen grease. *NEVER use water on this type of fire.*
Type C	For use on fires involving energized electrical equipment.
Type ABC	Works on all three types of fires listed above.

Operation

When you use the fire extinguisher, ALWAYS keep your back to a clear exit for an easy escape. Leave *immediately* if the fire cannot be controlled or the room fills with smoke.

There are different types and sizes of fire extinguishers, but for the most part, all of them work the same.

To operate a fire extinguisher, remember the word: P.A.S.S.

PULL the pin. Hold the extinguisher with the nozzle pointing away from you, and release the locking mechanism.

AIM low. Point the extinguisher at the base of the fire.

SQUEEZE the lever slowly and evenly.

SWEEP the nozzle from side-to-side until the fire is out.

Disposal

Please check the local laws BEFORE disposing of your used (non-refillable) dry chemical fire extinguisher. Contact your local fire, sanitation or environmental protection department for rules on disposal.

Emergency Egress Window

The *Emergency Egress Window* (*or exit window)* is your secondary exit, if the RV's entrance door becomes blocked or unavailable. All egress windows are marked with an "**EXIT**" **label** (*right*) and have **RED** handles or levers. Depending upon the window type, an egress window may be a large section or an entire window. Learn and practice how to open and operate the egress window before an emergency occurs:

- When pulling into your campsite, make sure the egress windows are not blocked by trees or other obstacles.
- Also check that below each egress window the ground is solid and the escape path is clear.
- Review the egress window locations and how to operate them with all people staying in the RV.
- Plan escape routes from the front and rear of the RV.
- Decide who will exit through the emergency escape windows first, and in what position.
- Place a blanket or heavy coat over the window frame to cushion the exit.
- If there is a fire, the last person to exit the RV should be prepared to assist those in front.
- Arrange for a meeting place safely away from the RV.

Maintenance

- To prevent the seals from sticking, OPEN and CLOSE your *Emergency Egress Window*(*s*) each trip.
- During transit the *Egress Window*(*s*) ***must*** be locked.

An emergency egress window is identified with an "EXIT" label. DO NOT remove this label from the window:

Smoke Alarm

⚠WARNING

Test Smoke Alarm operation after the RV has been in storage, before each trip and at least once per week during use.

⚠WARNING

NEVER use an open flame from a match or lighter to test the smoke alarm; you may accidentally ignite and set fire to the smoke alarm and your RV.

If the Smoke Alarm does NOT test properly, REPLACE it immediately.

DURING TESTING: You will hear a loud, repeating horn pattern and the red LED will flash rapidly on the smoke alarm.

Smoke Alarm

The smoke alarm is located on the ceiling in the main living area of your RV. It is intended to help reduce injury or loss of life in a fire. Proper use can give you time to escape, but they are not foolproof. Smoke alarms only sound when smoke reaches them.

- Smoke alarms MUST be properly located, installed, and maintained.
- **Individuals with hearing loss or certain medical problems should consider using warning devices that provide both audible and visual signals**

Operation

- Check that a 9-volt battery is correctly connected.
- When the battery is supplying power, the red LED will flash.
- *If smoke is detected by the sensor*, a loud alarm will sound until the air is cleared.

If the smoke alarm sounds

During an alarm, you will hear a loud, repeating horn pattern and the red LED will flash rapidly.

- The alarm warns you of a potentially dangerous situation that ***requires*** *your immediate attention*.
- **NEVER ignore any alarm.** Ignoring the alarm may result in injury or death.
- EVACUATE the RV first, *then*
- Call 911 from a safe location.

How to test

TEST the smoke alarm at least once EVERY WEEK to make sure that it is working properly. Stand at arm's length from the alarm when testing. **The alarm horn is loud and may be harmful to your hearing**.

1. PRESS and HOLD the *TEST/SILENCE* button on the smoke alarm cover until the alarm sounds. The alarm may continue for a few seconds after you release the button.
2. If the alarm does not sound, check that it is receiving power, *then* TEST it again.
3. CHECK that the CO Alarm is clean and dust-free.
4. *If it still does not alarm*, REPLACE it immediately.

Battery

The smoke alarm will NOT function ***if the battery is:***

- Missing, Disconnected, or Dead.
- Installed incorrectly
- The wrong type.

REPLACE the 9-volt battery in your Smoke Alarm when it *chirps* (*the low battery warning*). NEVER disconnect the battery to silence the smoke alarm.

- **When the *low battery warning* sounds, the battery MUST be replaced to continue your protection.**

Maintenance

- **DO NOT clean with water, solvents, cleaning agents, bleach, or polish as these may damage the alarm.**
- VACUUM the Smoke Alarm cover *at least* once a month.
- DO NOT paint over the unit. Paint may clog the openings to the sensing chambers and prevent it from operating properly.

Carbon Monoxide (CO)

Carbon monoxide (CO) is an insidious poison. It is a colorless, odorless and tasteless gas. It can endanger lives even at low levels of concentration. Many cases of reported carbon monoxide poisoning indicate while victims are aware they are not well, they become so disoriented they are unable to save themselves by either exiting or calling for assistance. Young children and household pets may be the first affected.

CO gas is produced when any type of fuel is incompletely burned. Potential sources of CO in and around your RV can include gas or diesel engine exhaust, portable space heaters, gas stoves and ovens, furnaces, defective engine exhaust systems, portable grills, other nearby RVs, portable generators, generator exhaust, and other propane-powered appliances.

CARBON MONOXIDE (CO) POISONING may cause the following symptoms:

It is important to discuss these symptoms with ALL household members and RV guests.

- **Mild exposure:** Headaches, running nose, sore or watery eyes, often described as *flu-like* symptoms.
- **Medium exposure:** Dizziness, drowsiness, vomiting.
- **Extreme exposure:** Unconsciousness, brain damage and death.

⚠WARNING

The Smoke Alarm does NOT operate without working batteries.

Removing the batteries, or failure to replace them at the end of their service life, removes your protection.

⚠WARNING

Many cases of reported CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING indicate that while victims are aware they are not well, they become so disoriented they are unable to save themselves by either exiting the building or calling for assistance.

⚠WARNING

If you are in an RV with either a nearby tow vehicle engine or generator running there is a potential for exhaust fumes to filter back into the RV.

The best protection against Carbon Monoxide entry into the RV is a properly maintained ventilation system and an active Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detector/Alarm.

To allow for proper operation of the ventilation system, keep the ventilation inlet grills clear of snow, leaves or other obstructions.

⚠WARNING

LIMITATIONS of CO and GAS ALARMS

This combination alarm will not work without power; it is wired directly to the RV's 12-volt electrical system. Continual power is supplied by the auxiliary battery. If a battery cable is disconnected at the terminal, this alarm will not work.

Other reasons for no alarm power are; a blown or missing fuse, broken wire, a faulty wire connection or circuit breaker, a discharged battery, cut lead wires, or improper supply (+) or ground (-) connections.

This alarm will ONLY indicate the presence of gas at the sensor. CO or explosive propane/natural gas may be present in other areas. DO NOT block or cover the alarm with any object that can prevent a gas leak or carbon monoxide from reaching the sensor.

This alarm may not alarm at low CO levels. Individuals with medical problems may consider using warning devices, which provide audible and visual signals for CO concentrations under 30 ppm.

This alarm may not be heard. The alarm's loudness is designed to meet or exceed regulatory standards; however, the alarm may not be heard if alarms are located in remote locations or behind closed doors. Persons who are hard-of-hearing, have consumed alcoholic beverages, taken prescription, non-prescription or illegal drugs, may not hear the alarm.

Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane Gas (LP) Alarm

- **Register your *Safe-T-Alert* product online at: mtiindustries.com/product-registration/**

The combination alarm contains two independent, self-cleaning electronic sensors designed to sense the presence of carbon monoxide (CO) and propane gas. When the LED on the front glows green, the alarm is active.

The gas sensor may also detect other combustible fumes or vapors including; acetone, alcohol, butane and gasoline. These chemicals can be found in common items such as deodorant, cologne, perfume, wine, liquor, adhesive, lacquer, kerosene, most cleaning agents and the propellants of aerosol cans.

High temperatures can activate glue and adhesive vapors. If your RV is closed on a hot day, the chemicals used in its construction may be detected, even months after the vehicle was built.

*See **page 32-35:** Indoor Air Quality, Chemical Sensitivity & Outgassing, and Formaldehyde.*

Combination Alarm Operation

To be operational, the combination alarm MUST have power supplied by the RV's 12-volt electrical system. The alarm will operate normally down to 7-volts DC. DO NOT allow the auxiliary battery to fall below 7-volts DC.

- Simultaneous CO and Propane Alarms - If both CO and propane gas are detected at the same time:
  - The combination alarm will give higher priority to the propane alert. A gas explosion is the more immediate potential danger.
  - The propane LED will flash red and the *beep* will sound. The CO LED will remain a steady red until the RV is ventilated.
- The CO sensor requires a ten (10) minute initial warm-up period to clean the sensor and achieve stabilization.
  - The warm-up period is indicated by the CO LED blinking green. **During the warm-up period the unit cannot go into a CO alarm**.
  - After the warm-up period, the green LED should glow continuously. If the LED is not lit please refer to the troubleshooting section, and contact your dealer for assistance.

- The Propane Gas sensor has an approximately one (1) minute warm-up period. After 1 minute the alarm can detect explosive gas. **During the warm-up period the unit cannot go into a propane gas alarm.**
- DO NOT attempt to fix the combination alarm yourself.

Combination CO/LP Alarm

The combination alarm has two indicator lights that display a specific color for each monitored condition. There also is a matching sound pattern for alarm conditions.

- **PROPANE GAS ALARM:** If a dangerous level of propane or methane gas is detected, the red LED will flash and the alarm will sound a steady tone. The alert will continue until the *TEST/MUTE* button on the front of alarm is pressed.

IMMEDIATE ACTION IS REQUIRED.

*See **page 29:** Procedures To Take During an **LP Gas Alarm**.*

Ventilate the RV. The red gas LED will continue to flash until the gas has cleared, or the gas alarm will reactivate in approximately five (5) minutes if the gas is still present. DO NOT RE-ENTER THE RV. The alarm will return to normal operation after the RV has properly ventilated.

- **CO ALARM:** If the CO level is over 35 ppm, the red CO LED will flash and the alarm will sound four (4) “beeps” then silent for five (5) seconds. This cycle will continue until the *TEST/MUTE* button on the front of alarm is pressed.

IMMEDIATE ACTION IS REQUIRED.

*See **page 30** Procedures To Take During a **CO Alarm**.*

Ventilate the RV. The red light will stay on until the CO has cleared, or the alarm will reactivate in approximately six (6) minutes if the CO is still present. DO NOT RE-ENTER THE RV. The alarm will return to normal operation after the RV has properly ventilated.

- **MALFUNCTION/SERVICE SIGNAL:** If any malfunction is detected, the gas LED will remain off and the Operational /CO LED will alternate red/green and the alarm will sound once every fifteen (15) seconds. Press the *TEST/MUTE* button. If the *TEST/MUTE* button does not clear the signals, check the auxiliary battery voltage. If the auxiliary battery voltage is not low and the combination alarm will not return to normal operation, immediately remove the alarm and return for service or warranty replacement.

⚠WARNING

This alarm is designed to detect Carbon Monoxide (CO) and Propane (LP) Gas.

The alarm is NOT designed to detect smoke or fire.

⚠WARNING

Actuation of this device indicates the presence of carbon monoxide (CO) or propane (LP) gases which can KILL YOU.

⚠WARNING

- When the alarm is first turned on, it cannot detect propane or sound a warning for two minutes.
- The propane leak alarm is not a smoke or fire alarm.
- The alarm will only indicate the presence of propane gas at the sensor.
- Explosive gas may be present in other areas.

⚠ CAUTION

If the combination alarm activates due to carbon monoxide or propane, **DO NOT re-enter the RV until the problem is corrected.** Contact your dealer for assistance.

⚠WARNING

The TEST button only tests the alarm circuit, not the sensors. You may use propane or butane gas to test the gas sensor.

⚠WARNING

Test your Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Gas Alarm after the RV has been in storage, before each trip and at least once per week during use.

Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Alarm, Continued

Operation	Audible Signal	Visual Signal
Normal	None	Steady Green
CO Alarm	4 "Beeps", 5 Seconds Off	Steady Red
Propane Alarm	Constant	Flashing Red
Alarm Malfunction	"Beep" Every 30 Seconds	Alternating Red/Green
End of Life	"Beep" Every 25-30 Seconds	Flashing Red-Red, Green-Green
Warm Up Cycle (About 10 Minutes)	No Sound	Flashing Green

This label is found loose in your Owner Information Package. Please read and place as directed.

PEEL OFF AND PLACE THIS LABEL NEAR THE CO ALARM. WRITE IN YOUR EMERGENCY SERVICES AND APPLIANCE TELEPHONE NUMBERS.

PROCEDURES TO TAKE DURING AN ALARM

⚠WARNING: Actuation of your CO alarm indicates the presence of carbon monoxide (CO) which can KILL YOU. If the alarm sounds; **1)** Operate the reset /silence button; **2)** Call your emergency services (Phone Number _____) (fire department or 911); **3)** Immediately move to fresh air - outdoors or by an open door/window. Do a head count to check that all persons are accounted for. Do not reenter the premises nor move away from the open door/window until the emergency responders have arrived, the premises have been aired out, and your alarm remains in its normal operation. **4)** After following steps 1-3, if your alarm reactivates within a 24 hour period, repeat steps 1-3 and call a qualified appliance technician. (Phone Number _____) to investigate for sources of CO from fuel burning equipment and appliances, and inspect for proper operation of this equipment. If problems are identified during this inspection have the equipment serviced immediately. Note any combustion equipment not inspected by the technician and consult the manufacturers' instructions, or contact the manufacturer directly, for more information about CO safety and this equipment. Make sure that the motor vehicles are not, and have not been, operating in an attached garage or adjacent to the residence.

MTI Label No. WL10982

Test Procedure

To reduce the risk of CO poisoning or propane gas explosion, TEST the combination alarm operation after the RV has been in storage, before each trip and at least once per week during use.

- The *TEST/MUTE button* tests all ***electrical*** functions of the alarm.
- It does NOT check the ***sensor*** operation.

You may use *propane* or *butane* gas to TEST the gas sensor:

- To test the CO sensor use a can of *SAFE-T-ALERT CO Test Gas* to test the 400 ppm calibration point.
- **DO NOT** try to generate CO to test the alarm.

NOTE: It may take up to ten (10) seconds for the alarm to sound.

The alarm may be tested at any time. PRESS and HOLD the *TEST/MUTE button* (*located on the front of the alarm*) for one (1) second. The alarm is working properly if the **green** indicator light changes color to **red** and the horn *beeps* four (4) times. The propane Gas LED should also blink **red**.

- **IMPORTANT! If this alarm does not test properly, return it immediately for repair or replacement.**

Procedures to Take During an LP Gas Alarm:

1. **EXTINGUISH all flames and smoking material, & TURN OFF all gas appliances.**
   (*Stove, Heater, Furnace, Refrigerator, etc.*)
   - DO NOT touch any electrical switch, or use phones / electronic devices in the RV.
2. **PRESS the Test/Mute switch to temporarily silence the alarm**
   - DO NOT disconnect power.
3. **EVACUATE *everyone* from the RV.**
   - EXECUTE your Family Safety Plan.
4. **LEAVE the door(s) and windows OPEN.**
5. **SHUT OFF the gas supply at the LP tank valve.**
   - DO NOT start any vehicle engine or generator.
6. **DETERMINE & REPAIR the source of the leak.**
7. **DO NOT RE-ENTER THE RV UNTIL THE PROBLEM IS CORRECTED.**

Contact your dealer or propane gas service to have the problem corrected BEFORE using the propane system.

WARNING

- Actuation of the Propane (LP) Gas Alarm indicates the presence of LP gas, which can cause an explosion and/or fire.

  This normally indicates a leak in the LP gas piping or an LP gas appliance.
- If the information in the manufacturer manual is not followed exactly, a fire or explosion may result, causing property damage, personal injury or loss of life.

How to take care of your alarm

The combination CO / Propane (LP) Gas Alarm is designed to be as maintenance free as possible. To keep your alarm in good working order:

- TEST the alarm weekly.
- VACUUM the dust off the alarm cover. At least once a year (more frequently in dusty locations) use the soft brush attachment of your vacuum to clean the alarm cover.
- CLEAN the alarm cover when it is dirty. Wash the alarm cover by hand using a cloth dampened in clean water. Dry with a soft cloth.
- DO NOT spray cleaning agents or waxes directly onto the front panel. This action may damage the sensor, cause an alarm or cause an alarm malfunction.
- OBSERVE the **color** of the *indicator light.*

  At frequent intervals and during your weekly test, check the indicator light on the front panel of the alarm.

Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Alarm, Continued

A CO alarm is NOT A SUBSTITUTE for other combustible gas, fire, or smoke alarms.

Procedures to Take During a CO Alarm (USA)

IF THE SIGNAL SOUNDS (*4 beeps and flashing or solid red light*)***:***

1. **PRESS the Test/Mute button (to temporarily silence the alarm).**
2. **MOVE TO FRESH AIR IMMEDIATELY, either *outdoors or by an open door or window.***
   - CHECK that all persons are accounted for.
   - CALL 911, your local emergency service, or fire department.
   - DO NOT re-enter the premises (*or move away from the open door/window*) until the emergency responders arrive, the premises have been aired out, *and* your alarm remains in its normal operation.
3. **If your CO alarm re-activates within a 24-hour period:**
   - REPEAT steps 1-2.
   - CALL a qualified appliance technician to inspect that all fuel burning appliances are operating properly, and to investigate for sources of carbon monoxide.
   - IF PROBLEMS ARE IDENTIFIED during this inspection, have the equipment SERVICED IMMEDIATELY.
4. **NOTE any combustion equipment *NOT* inspected by the technician.** For more information about CO safety and this equipment, consult the manufacturers' instructions, or contact the manufacturer directly.
5. **CONFIRM that a motor vehicle or generator engine operating nearby is *NOT* the source of CO inside your RV.**

Procedures to Take During a CO Alarm (Canada)

IF THE SIGNAL SOUNDS (*4 beeps and flashing or solid red light*)***:***

1. **PUSH the Test/Mute button**.
2. **MOVE TO FRESH AIR IMMEDIATELY, either *outdoors or by an open door or window.***
   - CHECK that all persons are accounted for.
   - DO NOT re-enter the premises or move away from the open door or window until the emergency responders have arrived, the premises has been aired out, *and* your alarm remains in its normal condition.
3. **CALL your emergency local service, fire department or 911.**

Carbon Monoxide (CO) Alarm

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel is also equipped with an additional carbon monoxide alarm. The CO alarm will sound if Carbon Monoxide (CO) in the air inside your RV reaches dangerous levels. If you hear this alarm, evacuate the RV immediately and stay outside in *fresh air* until the CO alarm ceases. It is important that you read and understand the OEM User's Manual found in the *Owner Information Package*.

- **The CO alarm is designed to be loud enough to wake up a sleeping person in an emergency.**

Prolonged exposure to the CO alarm at close distance may be harmful to your hearing. Individuals with hearing loss or certain medical problems, should consider using warning devices that provide both audible and visual signals.

If the CO alarm sounds: *See* ***page 30*** (*Previous Page*) *Procedures to take during a CO alarm.*

Test the CO alarm weekly

TEST the CO alarm at least once EVERY WEEK to make sure that it is working properly. Stand at arm's length from the alarm when testing. **The alarm horn is loud and may be harmful to your hearing**.

PUSH and HOLD the *TEST/SILENCE* button on the cover until the red LED flashes. The alarm horn will sound *4 beeps-pause, 4 beeps-pause*. The alarm sequence should last 5-6 seconds.

If the alarm does not test properly:

1. CHECK that the battery is installed correctly.
2. INSTALL a new 9V battery & RE-TEST the CO Alarm.
3. CHECK that the CO Alarm is clean and dust-free.
4. *If it still does not alarm,* REPLACE the CO Alarm immediately.

Battery

REPLACE the battery in your CO alarm when it "*chirps*" about once per minute (*the low battery warning*). NEVER disconnect the battery to silence the CO alarm.

- **When the *low battery warning* sounds, the battery MUST be replaced to continue your protection.**

Maintenance

To keep the CO Alarm in good working order:

- **DO NOT clean with water, solvents, cleaning agents, bleach, or polish as these may damage the alarm.**
- VACUUM the CO Alarm cover once a month, *then* RE-TEST.
- DO NOT paint over the unit. Paint may clog the openings to the sensing chambers and prevent it from operating properly.

Carbon Monoxide (CO) Alarm

CO Alarm Warnings are continued on the following page.

⚠WARNING

Actuation of your CO Alarm indicates the presence of carbon monoxide (CO) which can KILL YOU.

This CO Alarm will ONLY indicate the presence of carbon monoxide gas at the sensor. Carbon monoxide gas may be present in other areas.

⚠WARNING

TEST Carbon Monoxide Alarm operation: after the RV has been in storage, before each trip, and once a week while in use.

- If the CO Alarm ever fails to test correctly, have it replaced immediately!
- If the CO Alarm is NOT working properly, it *cannot* alert you to a problem.
- Failure to test units used in RV's as described may remove your protection.

The Test/Silence button is the only proper way to test the CO Alarm.

NEVER test the CO alarm with vehicle exhaust! Exhaust may cause permanent damage and voids your warranty.

CO Alarm Warnings continued from the previous page:

WARNING

DO NOT stand close to the Alarm when the horn is sounding.

Exposure at close range may be harmful to your hearing. When testing, STEP AWAY when horn starts sounding.

WARNING

This CO Alarm does NOT operate without working batteries.

Removing the batteries, or failure to replace them at the end of their service life, removes your protection.

WARNING

DO NOT try fixing the Alarm yourself, this will void your warranty!

If the CO Alarm is NOT operating properly, and it is still under warranty, please see "How to Obtain Warranty Service" in the Limited Warranty. Install a new CO Alarm immediately.

WARNING

DO NOT spray cleaning chemicals or insect sprays directly on or near the CO Alarm.

DO NOT paint over the CO Alarm. Doing so may cause permanent damage.

Indoor Air Quality

To maintain indoor air quality:

- **Allow your RV proper ventilation.**
- **Keep the interior clean.**
- **Avoid harmful air pollutants.**

Common air pollution sources include molds, pollen, pet dander, cigarette smoke, household cleaners and carbon monoxide from burning propane, charcoal or other fuels.

- **Proper Ventilation** carries air pollutants outside your RV, and dilutes emissions from indoor sources with fresh air from the outdoors.
- **Poor Ventilation** may increase pollutant levels inside your RV. High temperature and humidity levels can also increase the concentration of some indoor air pollutants.
- ***Those most at risk* for REACTIONS to poor air quality include: Children, The Elderly, and Persons with Asthma, Allergies, Heart Disease, or Chronic Lung Diseases such as Bronchitis and Emphysema**.

To improve your air quality:

- BREATHE ***fresh air*** by opening windows.
- Spend as much time as you can OUTSIDE in ***fresh air***.
- ***CONTROL MOLD:***
  - CLEAN the bathroom and kitchen often.
  - FIX any water leaks.
  - CLOSE windows and RUN your air conditioner (AC) and/or your dehumidifier.
  - CLEAN any mold you see or smell with a solution of One Cup of BLEACH *or less*, to One Gallon of WATER.
  - NEVER mix bleach with ammonia.
- CLEAN & VACUUM often to get rid of dust and pet fur which can irritate your nose and throat.
- DO NOT use bug spray inside your trailer.
- DO NOT smoke inside your RV. In addition to causing damage to your RV, tobacco smoke releases formaldehyde and other air pollutants.

EPA Recommendations

The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) recommends three basic strategies to improve indoor air quality:

1. **Remove sources**. Eliminating the sources of pollution or reducing their emissions are the most effective ways to improve indoor air quality. This strategy can have an impact on the following pollutants:
   - Biological Contaminants such as bacteria, molds, mildew, viruses, animal dander, and pollen.
   - Household Products such as paints, varnishes, cleaning and disinfecting solutions, cosmetics and hobby products.
   - Pesticides.
2. **Ventilation**. Increasing the amount of outside air coming inside helps to lower the concentration of indoor pollutants. Allow fresh air to circulate your RV often. OPEN the doors, windows, and exhaust vents. Operating fans, vent fans, and the roof air conditioner(s) or furnace also helps to bring in *fresh air* and force out *stale air*.
   - Keeping your RV closed, decreases the air flow, which increases the presence of indoor air pollutants.
   - Many recommendations in this manual can assist you in avoiding exposure to air pollutants and outgassed chemicals.

   *See the **Next Page**, Chemical Sensitivity & Outgassing.*
   *See **page 35-36**, Tips to controlling condensation.*
3. **Air Cleaners**. Air cleaners are designed to remove particles from the air. Their effectiveness depends on how well they collect pollutants from indoor air, and how much air is drawn through the cleaning/filtering element. An effective air cleaner requires both an efficient collector and a high air-circulation rate.

   There are many sizes and types of air cleaners on the market. Most of the less expensive, table-top models, are much less effective at particle removal. Generally, air cleaners DO NOT remove gaseous pollutants.

Chemical outgassing is NOT a defect in your RV.

It is NOT covered by the Limited Base or Limited Structural Warranties.

Please follow the recommendations in this section to address the concern.

Chemical Sensitivity & Outgassing

When you first purchase your new RV, or after it has been closed for an extended time, you may notice a chemical odor due to outgassing. This is normal, and NOT a defect.

Outgassing (*or offgassing*) is the release of a chemical gas that was dissolved, trapped, frozen or absorbed in a material. The amounts released through outgassing decrease over time.

Just like in your home, RV construction uses many products such as plywood, carpet, insulation, vinyl flooring, upholstery, etc. These new products may outgas different chemicals, including formaldehyde. This can continue over time, and in particular, when exposed to elevated temperatures or humidity.

- Because an RV has much less interior space than a house, there is considerably less exchange of air inside an RV.
- This minimal air exchange can make any outgassed chemicals more noticeable.

Chemical sensitivity may cause you to experience irritation of the eyes, nose, and throat and sometimes headache, nausea, and a variety of asthma-like symptoms. Elderly persons, young children, or anyone with a history of asthma, allergies or lung problems, may be more susceptible to the effects of outgassing.

Formaldehyde

If you have any questions regarding the health effects of formaldehyde or other air pollutants, consult your doctor or local health department.

Most of the attention regarding chemical outgassing surrounds formaldehyde. Some people are very sensitive to formaldehyde exposure while others may have no reaction.

Formaldehyde is a naturally occurring substance. It is a key industrial chemical used in the manufacture of numerous consumer goods including products used in RV construction. Trace levels of formaldehyde are also released from smoking, cooking, and the use of many other household products like detergents, cleaners, paints, coatings and cosmetics.

California Air Resource Board (CARB) Notice

Formaldehyde is used widely in building materials such as pressed wood products, particleboard, hardwood plywood paneling, medium density fiberboard (MDF), and plywood which are commonly used throughout the Recreational Vehicle Industry. As mandated by the RV Industry, Grand Design RV recreation vehicles contain composite wood products (hardwood plywood, particle board, and MDF) that comply with the California Air Resource Board (CARB) formaldehyde emission standards under California Code of Regulations § 93120.2(a) Phase 2 (P2).

Effects of Prolonged Occupancy

- **If you plan to occupy your RV for an extended period, be prepared to deal with condensation and the humid conditions that may be encountered.**

Your RV is designed primarily for recreational and extended stay use. Modern RVs have a relatively small volume due to their compact construction. The normal living activities of even a few occupants in the RV, can lead to rapid moisture saturation of the air inside and the appearance of visible moisture, especially in cold weather.

Condensation

Condensation refers to the water droplets that appear on cold surfaces when the water vapor in the air cools, and changes to liquid water. In cold weather, it may be seen as frost or ice.

- *Moisture can condense on the inside of an RV during cold weather the same way that moisture collects on the outside of a cold glass during humid weather.*

Condensation may also collect out of sight within the walls or ceiling, causing warped or stained panels. Appearance of these conditions may indicate a serious condensation problem. To minimize condensation inside your RV, moisture in the air must be carried outside by ventilation, or removed with a dehumidifier (customer supplied).

Tips to controlling condensation

To reduce moisture in the air inside your RV, use these tips:

- Allow excess moisture to escape to the outside when bathing, washing dishes, hair drying, laundering and using appliances and non-vented gas burners.
- Keep the bathroom door closed, roof vent opened and turn on the exhaust fan (if equipped) while bathing or showering and for some time after you have finished.
- When cooking, always operate the range hood fan. Cooking releases heat and moisture that can quickly result in condensation in your RV; operating the range hood fan can be effective in removing both.
- DO NOT hang wet clothes in the RV to dry.
- Use a fan to keep air circulating inside the vehicle so condensation and mildew cannot form in dead air spaces.

If the tips presented here for controlling condensation are NOT effective, it may be necessary for you to invest in a dehumidifier to reduce the health risk to you or your family, as well as prevent damage to your RV.

Condensation, Continued

- Allow air to circulate, keeping the temperature the same throughout the RV, even inside the cabinets.
  - Leave closet and cabinet doors partially open.
  - A closed cabinet full of stored goods will prevent circulation and can cause condensation.

In hot weather

- Start the air conditioner early in the day to remove excess humidity from the air while lowering the temperature.

In cold weather

- During cold weather it is very important to continue utilizing your vents and vent fans. This will keep the humid air inside moving to the outside. Keeping the RV tightly closed during cold weather will *increase* condensation.
- Manage the inside temperature during cold weather. The warmer temperatures inside your RV will cause condensation to form on areas that are not well insulated (ie., windows, vents, wall studs, etc.).

Cold Weather Use

Please keep in mind, that your RV is not designed for use during sub-freezing weather. If you plan to use your RV in freezing (or below freezing) temperatures, the following precautions MUST be taken:

- The ***Water Heater, Plumbing Systems*** and ***drainage*** require added protection to avoid freezing.
- More frequent furnace operation substantially increases battery draw and propane use.
  - Sufficient power and propane are required to protect against possible freeze-ups of the propane regulator.
- Proper ventilation or the addition of a dehumidifier may be required to reduce condensation.
- To avoid damage to parts, CHECK the outside of the RV for ice BEFORE operating the: slide outs, compartment doors, locks, windows, vents etc.

If you have further questions, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

Where There Is Moisture, There May Be Mold

Molds are microscopic organisms that can live in virtually any indoor or outdoor environment. Mold growth requires a source of moisture (*high humidity, wet/damp materials, standing water*) and a temperature between 40˚ and 100˚ Fahrenheit.

According to the Center for Disease Control, exposure to damp and moldy environments may cause a variety of health defects, or none at all.

- For people *sensitive* to molds, mold exposure may cause nasal congestion, coughing, wheezing, and/or irritation of the eyes, throat, or skin.
- People with *mold allergies* may have more severe reactions to mold exposure. Immune-compromised people and those with chronic lung illnesses, like obstructive lung disease, risk serious lung infections.

Mold growth can be very harmful to the natural wood products and fabrics in your RV. Follow these tips to help control the relative humidity inside your RV and inhibit mold and mildew:

- While cooking and bathing, ALWAYS use the kitchen and bathroom vents, even during colder weather.
- In addition, opening a window will increase ventilation during these activities.
- Running your air conditioner will also reduce the relative humidity.
- In extremely humid conditions, using a dehumidifier (customer supplied) can be helpful.

Mold Prevention

To help protect your RV from mold, follow these important preventative measures:

- Clean regularly, especially the kitchen and bathroom. On safe surfaces, use cleaning products that kill mold and mildew.
- Any spills should be wiped up and dried right away.
- DO NOT leave any damp items inside the RV.
- Check sealants regularly. Reseal as needed to avoid water leaks.

Websites of Interest

We also recommend that you visit the following websites that maintain information about indoor air pollutants, including molds and formaldehyde, along with ways to improve indoor air quality:

- www.epa.gov/indoor-air-quality-iaq/publications-about-indoor-air-quality#insidestory
- www.**epa.gov/mold**
- www.**atsdr.cdc.gov**

Website Usage Disclaimers

Grand Design RV hereby disclaims and sets forth as follows:

Website Disclaimer of Warranty

The services, information and materials on websites listed in this manual are provided "AS IS" and Grand Design RV shall have absolutely no liability whatsoever in connection with these website services, information, external links or third party links on these websites. Your use of these websites are at your own risk. Grand Design RV shall have no liability whatsoever for any errors, omissions or inaccuracies in the information regardless of how caused or for delays or interruptions in delivery of the information, or any decision made or action taken or not taken in reliance upon the information furnished.

Grand Design RV accepts no responsibility or liability whatsoever with regard to information on these websites as the information is meant to be of a general nature only and is not intended to address the specific circumstances of any particular individual or entity.

The information provided is not necessarily comprehensive, complete, accurate or up to date; the information is sometimes linked to external sites over which Grand Design RV has no control and for which Grand Design RV assumes no responsibility. Grand Design RV shall have no liability for any loss or injury caused, in whole or in part, by its actions, omissions or negligence, or for any contingencies beyond its control in procuring, compiling or delivering any information. The information is not professional nor does it comprise legal advice (if you need specific advice, you should always consult a suitably qualified professional).

Disclaimer of Endorsement

Any reference within external or third party links to any specific commercial products, process or service by trade name, trademark, manufacturer or otherwise, does not constitute or imply its endorsement, recommendation or favoring by Grand Design RV. The appearance of external or third party links does not constitute endorsement by Grand Design RV of the linked web sites or the information, products or services contained therein.

Grand Design RV does not exercise any editorial control over the information you may find at these locations. External or third party links may be provided for the convenience of the users of that website. Grand Design RV is not responsible for the availability or content of these external or third party sites and does not endorse, warrant or guarantee any products, services, information, centers or schools described or offered at these links.

Additional Safety Precautions

Air Quality

Proper ventilation of your RV is required to maintain air quality. Breathing and daily activities like cooking and bathing, add moisture to the air. This moisture can become condensation.

- Condensation inside your RV indicates that proper ventilation is NOT occurring.
- Condensation can lead to mold growth.
- Proper ventilation helps remove formaldehyde which is contained in some building materials as well as a by-product of combustion.

Generators

- **Your RV is designed to ONLY use generators built specifically for RVs.**

Generator / Vehicle Exhaust

ONLY operate a generator (OEM or customer supplied) in an open outdoor area where the exhaust can dissipate.

- To avoid the dangers of carbon monoxide, prevent exhaust gases from entering your RV.
- Close all entry/compartment doors and windows near vehicle or generator exhaust.

NOTICE

Generators are NOT intended to power sensitive electronic equipment without using an added appropriate line conditioner and surge protector.

Sensitive electronic equipment includes, but is not limited to, audio/video equipment, some TVs, computers, and printers.

These electronics should be operated on approved inverter-type generators or pure sine wave generators.

Additional Safety Precautions, Continued

Loading & Weight Distribution

- Distribute cargo weight evenly throughout your vehicle.
- NEVER exceed your RV's *Cargo Carrying Capacity* or *Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.*
- Place heavy items in the center of your vehicle, on the floor.
- Balance loads *front-to-rear* and *side-to-side.*

Passenger Safety

- **DO NOT allow anyone to ride inside as a passenger while your RV is in motion.**
- This practice is *against the law* in several states.

Propane Appliances & Equipment

- Turn OFF all propane appliances and equipment (including the tanks) are BEFORE departing on a trip.
- Understand all propane safety warnings and follow manufacturer recommended operating procedures.
- **Propane gas is flammable, improper use may result in a fire or explosion.**

Tire Pressure

- ALWAYS check tire pressure BEFORE departing on any trip, even a short distance. For proper tire inflation pressures, refer to the *Tire Information Label.*

Towing

High cross winds and the external forces created by large trucks as they pass, may cause *swaying* or *fishtailing.* This can lead to a loss of control, resulting in serious injury or death. Under these conditions, slow down and pay close attention to other vehicles.

- ALWAYS follow posted speed limits, *and*
- Adjust for weather or road conditions that can impact the stability/handling of your tow vehicle and RV.

Wheel Torque

- ALWAYS check the torque on *all* lug nuts BEFORE departing on any trip, even a short distance.
- For lug nut torque specifications and patterns, refer to the Tire & Wheel section of this manual.
- ALWAYS use a calibrated torque wrench to confirm proper torque.

Pre-Travel Information

To help ensure your traveling enjoyment, update your GPS (customer supplied) and confirm that your route is planned with current road maps. Call ahead for tourist information for the areas that you will be visiting or traveling through. Research that your planned camping adventures comply with all federal, state and local regulations.

- Arrange for someone to check your house periodically while you are away. Stop mail or newspaper delivery.
- If you intend to be away for more than two weeks, you may want to consider requesting police surveillance for your house.
- Carry an extra set of vehicle and house keys with you on a separate key ring.
- Check that your driver's license is valid. Be sure to renew your license in advance if it will expire during your trip.
- If you are planning to visit other countries, contact the consulate nearest the point at which you plan to enter that country for the specific and most current information (including rules for re-entering the United States).

Always carry your vehicle registration, insurance policy card(s) and warranty registration.

Keep a record of your license number and 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) in the event that theft or vandalism requires you to supply this information to the authorities.

Tow Vehicle Disclaimer

- **As a *minimum* requirement, your tow vehicle's *Towing Capacity MUST BE GREATER THAN* the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) of your RV.**

Contact your automotive dealer to confirm the towing capacity of your vehicle, weather you are buying a new tow vehicle, or will tow your RV with one that you already own. Discuss the GVWR, size and type of RV that you will be towing. If you plan to purchase a new vehicle, some trucks can be purchased with an optional tow package.

Some automotive manufacturers publish brochures that discuss towing considerations. Ask your automotive dealer how to obtain a copy of this information. Verify that the weight ratings listed in the brochure are for your exact vehicle, ie, the correct year, model, engine, transmission, suspension and any relevant options.

⚠WARNING

Grand Design RV disclaims any liability with respect to damages that may be incurred by a customer or owner of a Grand Design RV recreational vehicle as a result of the operation, use or misuse of a tow vehicle.

Vehicle Labels

Decals and data plates used throughout the RV aid in its safe and efficient operation; others give service instructions. Read all decals, data and instruction plates before operating your RV. If any decal, data or instruction plate is painted over, damaged or removed, it should be replaced.

Weight Ratings & Definitions

⚠WARNING

Exceeding a rating may result in unsafe conditions, potential damage, may void a warranty, may complicate an insurance claim, and in some cases, may violate a law.

⚠WARNING

The *actual total weight* of the vehicle, all options, liquids, your personal cargo, and the hitch weight ***is important to know*** so that you **DO NOT exceed** the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) of the RV.

The volume of space available for storage **may exceed the amount of available Cargo Capacity.**

Large storage compartments have been designed to accommodate normal camping items, which are bulky, but not necessarily heavy.

It is essential to understand and stay within the weight ratings of your RV and tow vehicle. Learning these definitions is the first step in safely managing your RV's weight and balance. Vehicle and trailer weight numbers fall into two categories:

- **Ratings** are maximum limits, NEVER to be exceeded. These limits are established by Grand Design RV and our component manufacturers in the design of the vehicle.
- **Weight** and **Load** are often used interchangeably. Weight is measured by putting an RV, tow vehicle or its components on a scale. Vehicles and cargo have *weight*, which impart *loads* to tires, axles, and hitches.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) - GAWR is the maximum weight each axle is designed to carry.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) - GVWR (also called *Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight*) includes the GAWR *plus* the hitch weight. It is the maximum allowed weight for a fully loaded RV or tow vehicle.

Gross (Trailer/Vehicle) Weight - Gross Weight is the total actual weight of your RV *plus* cargo, as measured on a scale.

UVW (Unloaded Vehicle Weight) - UVW is the weight of the RV as built at the factory. The UVW includes the empty LP bottles but does NOT include cargo, water, LP gas, or dealer-installed accessories.

Hitch Weight (or *Tongue Weight*) - is the amount of weight that presses down on the hitch when an RV is connected to a vehicle.

CCC (Cargo Carrying Capacity)

- United States: CCC is equal to GVWR *minus* the following: UVW and LP gas weight. *Water is considered cargo weight.*
- Canada: CCC is equal to GVWR *minus* the following: UVW, LP gas weight, and full fresh (or *potable*) water weight (*including the water heater*).

*For additional definitions, See **page 235**, Glossary.*

Weight Labels

Vehicle weight labels are affixed to your RV to help you make an informed decision before your purchase. DO NOT REMOVE THESE LABELS. If the labels are missing, contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service for replacements.

Federal Certification Label

This label specifies the maximum capacities for GVWR, GAWR and tires. It is located on the forward, off-door-side exterior.

MANUFACTURED BY/FABRIQUE PAR: Grand Design RV, LLC DATE: 01/2013

GVWR/PNBV 7264 KG(16000 LB)
GAWR(EACH AXLE)/PNBE (CHAQUE ESSIEU) 3178 KG(7000 LB)
TIRES/PNEU ST235/80R16 RIMS/JANTE 16x6 8-6.5
COLD INFL. PRESS./PRESS. DE GONFL. A FROID 552 KPA(80 PSI/LPC) SINGLE

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE U.S. FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE. THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE STANDARDS PRESCRIBED UNDER THE CANADIAN MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY REGULATIONS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE. - CE VEHICULE EST CONFORME A TOUTES LES NORMES QUI LUI SONT APPLICABLES EN VERTU DU REGLEMENT SUR LA SECURITE DES VEHICULES AUTOMOBILES DU CANADA EN VIGUEUR A LA DATE DE SA FABRICATION.

V.I.N./N.I.V.: 573FS3821D1100001 TYPE/TYPE: TRAILER TRA/REM Solitude Fifth-Wheel

Tire and Loading Information Label

This label specifies the tire size information, recommended cold tire pressure, and the maximum amount of cargo that can be safely added to the RV. It is located on the forward, off-door-side exterior.

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

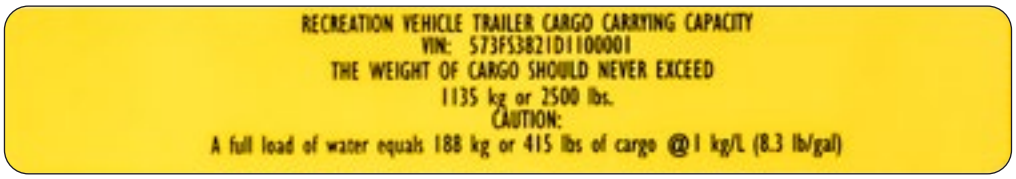
The weight of cargo should never exceed 1360 KG or 2998 LBS. Le poids de chargement ne devrait jamais excéder 1360 KG ou 2998 LBS.

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	ST235/80R16 LRE	552 KPA /80 PSI	
REAR ARRIÈRE	ST235/80R16 LRE	552 KPA /80 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	ST235/80R16 LRE	552 KPA /80 PSI	

573FS3821D1100001

Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC) Label

This label specifies the maximum cargo carrying capacity for your RV. It is located on the side edge of your *Main Entry Door*.


RECREATION VEHICLE TRAILER CARGO CARRYING CAPACITY
VIN: 573FS3821D1100001
THE WEIGHT OF CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED
1135 kg or 2500 lbs.
CAUTION:
A full load of water equals 188 kg or 415 lbs of cargo @1 kg/L (8.3 lb/gal)

RV Length Label

This label specifies the overall length of your recreational vehicle. It is located with the Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC) label on the side edge of your *Main Entry Door.*

Recreational vehicle overall length _____ as manufactured.

For Travel Trailers:
The length as measured from the leading front edge of the hitch coupler to the rear most extremity of the trailer, bumper or rear wall/rear cap *if not equipped or installed with a bumper*.

For Fifth Wheel Trailers:
The length as measured from the leading front edge of the pin box or extreme front of the front profile, whichever is further forward, to the rear most extremity of the trailer, bumper or rear wall/rear cap *if not equipped or installed with a bumper*.

Recreational vehicle overall length ***excludes*** some RV accessories as defined by Grand Design RV, including but not limited to:

- Safety-Related Equipment,
  (*Signal, Clearance, or Identification Lamps; Warning Lights; Appliance Vents & Vent Hoods*).
- Door Latches *and* Hinges.
- Entry *and* Exit Handholds.
- Exterior Ladders.
- Spare Tires *and* Spare Tire Brackets/Carriers.
- Bumper mount Outside Cooking Appliances.
- Hitch *or* Cargo Accessory Receivers, *and*
- Equipment used to secure cargo.

Cargo Capacities

When loading cargo into your RV, **DO NOT *exceed:***

- Maximum weight specified on the Cargo Carrying Capacity label
- GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)
- *Maximum Load Rating* of your RV tires.

Maximum Load Rating

The *Maximum Load Rating* of your RV tires is LESS THAN the GVWR. To calculate the actual weight on your RV tires, subtract the hitch weight from your RV's Gross Weight. The hitch weight is carried by your tow vehicle, not the RV tires.

For example:

- if your RV's tires are each rated at 2,000 lbs. **2,000 lbs. x 4 tires = 8,000 lbs**.
- Gross Weight is 9,000 lbs.
- with a hitch weight of 1,200 lbs., *then* **9,000 lbs. - 1,200 lbs. = 7,800 lbs**.

The *actual weight* on the RV tires is 7,800 lbs., This is *under* the load rating of the tires.

- **7,800 lbs. ÷ 4 tires = 1,950 lbs. each**

Water and Propane

- Your FRESH WATER is treated as *CARGO WEIGHT.*
- Water weighs approximately 8.34 lbs. per gallon.
  - 50 gallons of water weighs 417 lbs.

If you are close to your GVWR, ***reducing*** the amount of water in the holding tank will ***increase*** the amount of available cargo weight by the same amount. This flexibility allows you to make choices that fit your travel and camping needs.

Remember:

- Unloaded Vehicle Weight is calculated with *empty* LP bottles.
- Cargo Carrying Capacity is calculated including the weight of *full* LP bottles. **CCC = GVWR - (UVW - LP gas weight)**

If you have further questions, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

⚠WARNING

The load capacity of your RV is designated by weight, not by volume. All available storage space cannot necessarily be used when loading the RV.

For the best possible handling:

- DO NOT exceed your GVWR.
- Ensure you are loading the vehicle evenly.
- To prevent shifting during travel, secure heavy items.

⚠WARNING

ONLY store items in the areas designated for storage.

DO NOT store anything in the areas reserved for the furnace, water heater, converter, or electrical panels, etc.

⚠WARNING

NEVER load the RV in excess of the GAWR for either axle.

Overloading the RV may result in adverse handling characteristics & damage to the chassis.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT EXCEED YOUR GVWR! This means you should weigh your RV as loaded for your normal travel to determine the actual weight.

If you exceed the GVWR, you MUST remove items from the RV, or drain liquids, then re-weigh the RV to ensure you have achieved a safe weight.

DO NOT travel with full grey/black holding tanks. This not only wastes gas but, depending upon the location of the grey or black holding tanks, can affect handling characteristics.

Loading Your RV

Evenly distribute your cargo ***side-to-side*** for safe travel.

- The weight on each tire ***must not exceed*** one-half of the GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) for either axle.

DURING A SUDDEN STOP, free-standing furniture or overlooked items on the counter top/range can become dangerous projectiles.

- It is important to secure the appliance or furniture tie down straps (if so equipped).
- ***Store*** and ***Secure*** all LOOSE ITEMS inside your RV.

  Check that all items are safely put away BEFORE travel. (*canned goods, pots & pans, small appliances, etc.*)

Weighing Your Tow Vehicle & RV

- **TOTAL WEIGHT** and **BALANCE** are the two most important factors when loading your RV.
- ALWAYS verify that your loaded RV is in compliance with all applicable weight ratings.

Weigh your RV at a public scale to confirm that your loaded RV complies with all vehicle, tire and axle weight ratings. This will also help you to determine the proper load distribution.

- The area around the scale ***must*** allow for weighing each side of your RV.
- Individual scales may operate differently.

Traveling while your RV is OVERLOADED or with a load that is UNBALANCED:

- Will ADVERSELY AFFECT your tow vehicle's HANDLING
- Can cause COMPONENT FAILURE

OVERLOADING your RV will VOID:

- The Limited Base Warranty
- The Limited Structural Warranty, and the
- Manufacturer warranties of many component parts.

To weigh your Tow Vehicle and RV

BEFORE you begin, read through all the weighing instructions. Your RV must be weighed FULLY LOADED (*with food, water, clothing, supplies, propane, fuel, etc.*).

1. Weigh your RV while ***unhitched*** from the tow vehicle to obtain your *Gross Vehicle Weight* (GVW).
   - **FOR SAFE OPERATION:** Your RV's GVW ***must*** be *LESS THAN or EQUAL* to the GVWR.
   - ***If your RV's weight is GREATER THAN the GVWR,*** then you ***must*** REMOVE contents until the weight is in compliance with your RV's listed ratings.
2. Hitch your RV to the tow vehicle. Weigh the RV and tow vehicle to obtain your *Gross Combined Weight* (GCW).
   - Confirm that ***your* GCW** is *LESS THAN, or EQUAL to* the *Gross Combined Weight Rating* (*GCWR*) specified by the manufacturer of your tow vehicle.
   - ***If your GCW is GREATER THAN the GCWR,*** REMOVE contents until the weight is in compliance.
3. *While still hitched to the tow vehicle,* PULL onto the scale to weigh ***ONLY the RV***, and RECORD the weight. *This measures the total load carried by the RV tires.*
   - The difference of this weight, subtracted from the GVW is your *Hitch Weight*.
4. To obtain the side-to-side weights, there ***must*** be enough space on either side of the scale to accommodate the RV being partially off the scale.
   - Pull the RV so that the tires of **only one side** are on the scale. Your RV ***must*** remain as level as possible.
   - **For a BALANCED load:** The weight of one side of your RV, ***must*** be *EQUAL TO* **one half** of the weight determined in step #3.
   - ***If the weight of one side of the RV is <u>NOT EQUAL</u> to one half of the weight from step #3***,

     Then you ***must*** REDISTRIBUTE the load until the RV is equally balanced side-to-side.

When a load is ***unbalanced***, the components on the heavier side (*tires, wheels, brakes, springs, etc.*) may be ***overloaded***, even though the total axle load is within the GAWR.

- *If you have further questions, consult with your dealer or the scale operator.*

⚠WARNING

Exceeding the established weight ratings for the axles, running gear, tires and wheels can lead to failure that can affect motor vehicle safety and lead to property damage or damage to the RV.

⚠WARNING

Total weight of your tow vehicle and RV must not exceed the GCWR.

DO NOT assume that you can tow an RV that happens to be within the capacity of the tow vehicle hitch.

By doing so, you may exceed the total GCWR of your tow vehicle and RV towing combination.

⚠WARNING

It is important to redistribute the load to avoid component failure as well as to improve the handling characteristics of the vehicle.

Tire Safety Information

This portion of the Owner's Manual contains tire safety information as required by 49 CFR 575.6(4) and is based in part on the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration's (NHTSA) brochure titled *Tire Safety, Everything Rides On It.*

It is available as a free download on the NHTSA website:

https://**rosap.ntl.bts.gov/view/dot/16477**

Studies of tire safety show that the most important things you can do to avoid tire failure, blowouts and flat tires are:

- MAINTAIN proper tire pressure.
- OBSERVE tire and vehicle *Load Limits*.
  - NEVER carry more weight in your vehicle than your tires or vehicle can safely handle.
- AVOID road hazards.
- DRIVE within the designated tire speed ratings,
- INSPECT tires for cuts, slashes, and other irregularities.

These actions, along with other care and maintenance activities, can also:

- Improve vehicle handling.
- Help protect you and others from avoidable breakdowns and accidents.
- Improve fuel economy.
- Increase the life of your tires.

Make tire safety a regular part of your vehicle maintenance routine. Know that the time you spend is minimal compared with the inconvenience and safety consequences of a flat tire or other tire failure.

⚠WARNING

KEEP ALL TIRES PROPERLY INFLATED

A tire that is run long distances or at high speeds while seriously under-inflated will overheat to the point where the tire may lose air suddenly and/or catch fire, possibly resulting in damage to the vehicle and its contents and/or personal injury.

Basic Tire Maintenance - Safety First

Proper tire maintenance improves the stopping distance, traction, steering, and load-carrying capability of your vehicle. As mentioned above, to prevent flat tires and other types of tire failure, you should maintain proper tire pressure, observe tire and vehicle load limits, avoid road hazards, and regularly inspect your tires.

*See **page 52**, Tire Safety Tips.*

Maximum Load Rating

The *Maximum Load Rating* indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

Recommended Tire Pressure & Load Limits

***UNDER-INFLATED* TIRES and *OVERLOADED* VEHICLES are the major causes of TIRE FAILURE.** Tire information placards and vehicle certification labels provide important information on tires and load limits, *including*:

- Recommended Tire Size
- Recommended Tire Inflation Pressure
- Cargo Weight
  (*the maximum cargo weight the RV is designed to carry*)
- Front and Rear Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR)
  (*the maximum weight the axle system is designed to carry*)

*For the label locations and more detailed information, See **page 43**, Weight Labels*

Understanding Tire Pressure & Load Limits

Load Limits are determined by the tire size and the greatest amount of weight each tire can safely carry.

Tire Pressure is the amount of air pressure a tire requires to be properly inflated. It is measured in pounds per square inch (PSI). Tire pressure affects your RV's overall performance and provides the load-carrying capacity.

On the *Tire and Loading Information Label, t*he proper tire pressure for your vehicle is listed as ***Cold Tire Pressure***. You will find this number expressed in both PSI and kilo-pascals (KPA), the metric measurement used internationally.

It is difficult to obtain the recommended tire pressure when the tires are not cold.

*See the **next page**, Checking Tire Pressure.*

Because tires are designed to be used on more than one type of vehicle, tire manufacturers list the "maximum permissible inflation pressure" on the tire sidewall. This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

⚠WARNING

Always check tire pressure when tires are cold. Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as a tire that has not been used for three or more hours, or has been driven less than one mile.

Tire inflation pressure of a hot tire may show an increase as much as 6 PSI over a cold tire. **DO NOT exceed the maximum recommended pressure**.

Checking Tire Pressure

It is important to check your vehicle's tire pressure at least once a month for the following reasons:

- Most tires naturally lose air over time.
- Tires can lose air suddenly by driving over a pothole, hitting road debris, or striking the curb when parking.
- With radial tires, it is usually not possible to determine under-inflation by visual inspection.

For safety and convenience, purchase a tire pressure gauge to keep in your vehicle. They are sold at auto parts stores, hardware stores and many other retail outlets.

Steps for maintaining proper tire pressure

1. The recommended cold inflation pressure, is listed on the *Tire and Loading Information label* located on the off-door-side, forward exterior of your RV.
2. Use a *Tire Pressure Gauge* (customer supplied), to check the tire pressure of all tires.
   a. If the tire pressure is *TOO HIGH* in any of the tires, gently press on the tire valve stem with the edge of your tire gauge. Slowly release air until the correct pressure is reached.
   b. If the tire pressure is *TOO LOW* in any of the tires, this can be a serious ***safety hazard***. Add air to any *UNDER*-inflated tire as-soon-as possible.
3. At a service station or using a portable air compressor, ADD air to each under-inflated tire until the correct cold inflation pressure is reached. DO NOT *over*-inflate.
4. **Re-check** the RV tires with the *Tire Pressure Gauge.* Confirm that all four (4) tires are at the same recommended cold inflation pressure. **Adjust** as needed.

While it is ideal to check and fill tires when they are cold, ***if you discover an RV tire that is UNDER-inflated, even after you have been driving & the tires are warm:***

- ADD air until the *recommended cold inflation pressure* is reached.
- The warm tire may remain *slightly* under-inflated, but this is much safer than driving with a *significantly* under-inflated tire. **This fix is ONLY temporary.**
- REMEMBER to **re-check & adjust** the tire pressure as-soon-as a cold reading can be obtained.

How Overloading Affects Your RV & Tires

- ***OVERLOADING* your RV can have serious consequences for passenger safety.**
- **An *OVERLOADED* vehicle is hard to DRIVE *and* hard to STOP.**

Too much weight on your vehicle's suspension system can cause spring, shock absorber, or brake failure. It can also result in, handling or steering problems, irregular tire wear, tire failure, or other damage.

- In cases of serious overloading, ***brakes can FAIL completely***, particularly on a steep grade.

Tire overloading caused by an excessive load and/or tire *UNDER*-inflation results in abnormal tire flexing. *This can generate an excessive amount of heat within the tire.*

- **EXCESSIVE HEAT MAY LEAD TO TIRE FAILURE**.
- **PROPER INFLATION IS CRITICAL.** It is the air pressure that enables a tire to support the load.

The load a tire can safely carry is established by a combination of the tire size, the load range, and corresponding inflation pressure. The required air pressure for your RV tires ***must*** be determined from your actual load (*by weighing the RV*) and taken from the *Load and Inflation Tables* provided on the tire manufacturer's website.

- These air pressures may differ from those found on the certification label.
- RV weight or tire pressure should ***never exceed*** the tire's *Maximum Load Rating or Maximum Air Pressure*.
- ***If you discover that your tires cannot support these actual weights,*** REMOVE contents until the RV's weight is in compliance.

Steps for determining correct load limit

1. Locate the statement "The weight of cargo should ***never exceed*** XXX KG or XXX LBS" on your RV's Cargo Carrying Capacity label.
2. This figure equals the amount of ***available load capacity*** for cargo and luggage.

- **The combined weight of cargo and luggage loaded on your RV *must not exceed* the *available load capacity*.**

⚠ DANGER

If the total weight of the RV exceeds the GVWR, the trailer is overloaded.

Operating your RV while exceeding the specified weight ratings increases the risk of a crash, personal injury and death.

It is necessary to remove payload (equipment, water, personal belongings, etc.) until the total weight of the RV no longer exceeds the GVWR before operating the RV.

⚠ DANGER

If the weight on the trailer axles exceeds the GAWR, the axles are overloaded. Operating your RV while exceeding the specified weight ratings increases the risk of a crash, personal injury and death.

It is necessary to remove or rearrange payload (equipment, personal belongings, water, etc.) until the axle weight no longer exceeds the GAWR before operating the unit. Not operating your RV within the designed weight ratings can damage your recreational vehicle which is not covered under warranty.

Tire Safety Tips

Preventing tire damage

- DO NOT run over curbs or foreign objects in the roadway or when parking.
- *SLOW WAY DOWN* if you can not avoid a pothole or other object in the road.

Tire safety checklist

1. CHECK tire pressure *at least* monthly, including the spare.
2. INSPECT tires for uneven wear patterns on the tread, cracks, foreign objects, or any other damage.
3. *Carefully* REMOVE bits of glass or foreign objects wedged in the tread.
4. CHECK that all tire valves have valve caps.
5. CHECK tire pressure before going on any trip.
6. **DO NOT *overload* your vehicle.**

- FOLLOW the instructions for cargo and cold tire pressure found on your *Tire and Loading Information* label.

Tire Labeling

Federal law requires that tire manufacturers provide standardized information molded into the sidewall of all tires sold in the U.S. This includes the tire's size, construction, various capacities (max. pressure, load, speed) and the *Tire Identification Number*.

US DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The *Tire Identification Number* is provided for safety standard certification and in the event of a recall. More than just a serial number, this code identifies the specific production run of a tire.

- The **TIN** always begins with "DOT" usually followed by 10-12 numbers, letters, or symbols.
- The *fist* two (2) numbers or letters following DOT, are the **plant code** where the tire was manufactured.
- The *last* four (4) numbers show the **week** and **year** the tire was built. ***For example:***
  - **3119** = **the 31st week of 2019**.
- The other characters in the TIN are codes used at the tire manufacturer's discretion and vary by company.

Tire Ply Composition & Materials

Tires are constructed from multiple layers of rubber-coated fabric. Each of these layers is called a *ply*. In general, the higher the number of plies in a tire, the more weight it can support.

- Tire manufacturers must report all materials used in the composition of their tires, (*steel, nylon, polyester, etc.*)

Tire Size & Type Designation

To maintain tire safety, new tires purchased should match the OEM specifications of your RV's original tires. The tire specifications are found on your *Tire and Loading Information label* or the sidewall of the tire you are replacing.

The tires on your unit may for example, be marked with a designation of **ST 225/75R15**. *ST* stands for *Standard Trailer*, and the number breaks down as follows:

- The first three-digit number gives the width in millimeters of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.
- The next two-digit number after the "slash" mark, gives the height to width ratio of the tire. This is also known as the aspect ratio.
- The "**R**" stands for radial.
- The last two-digit number is the diameter *in inches* of the wheel or rim.

For further information, please contact a tire dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

Speed Rating

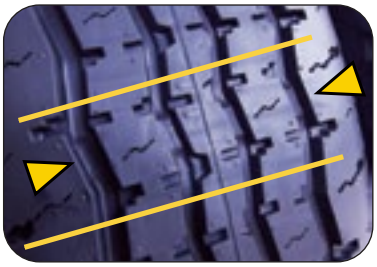
- Typical **ST** tires have a speed rating designation of "**L**", which is 75 mph (under normal inflation and load conditions).
- **DO NOT *exceed the Speed Rating*** regardless of the posted maximum speed limit.

Tire Warranty

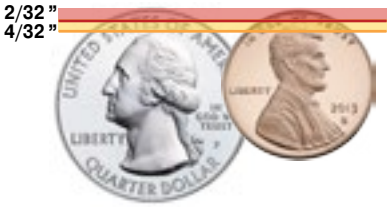
- **Tires are warranted by the TIRE MANUFACTURER, *not by Grand Design RV.***

If you need tire warranty assistance, please refer to the tire warranty information provided in your Owner Information Package or contact your dealer.

Tire Tread



Tire Tread Wear Bars



The tire tread provides the gripping action and traction that prevent your vehicle from slipping or sliding, especially when the road is wet or icy. In general, tires are not safe and should be replaced when the tread is worn down to 1/16 of an inch.

Tread wear bars are raised sections built into the bottom of a tire's tread grooves that show how much tread is remaining. When they appear "even" with the outside of the tread, it is time to replace your tires.

The Penny & Quarter Tests

Place a penny or quarter upside down into the tire groove.

- **Penny -** If you can see the top of Lincoln's head, you are ready for new tires.
- **Quarter -** If you can see the top of Washington's head, tires are OK but close to wearing out.

Inspect your tires regularly for uneven tread wear.

Wear Pattern	Possible Cause	Solution
Edge Wear Thin Tread Wear on Tire Edges	Under Inflation	Fill tire with an air compressor to the Recommended Cold Tire Pressure
Center Wear Thin Tread Wear Center of Tire	Over Inflation	Press tire valve stem, slowly release air until reaching the Recommended Cold Tire Pressure
Side Wear Exagerated Inner *or* Outer Tread Wear	Loss of Camber *or* Overloading	Make sure your load does NOT exceed the axle rating.
Toe Wear Thin Inner or Outer Edge	Alignment *or* Incorrect Toe-in	Correct Toe-In is 0 - 0.5 degrees
Cup Wear Diagonal "*Scalloped*" Tread Wear	Loose Bearings *or* Wheel Balance	Check Bearing Adjustment *and* Tire & Wheel Balance
Flat Spots Flat Spots *or* Patchy Tread Wear	Tire Skidding Wheel Lock Up *or* Out of Balance	Avoid Sudden Stops, Adjust Brakes Check Tire & Wheel Balance

Spare Tire

The spare tire is secured below your RV. Use your spare tire if a trailer tire is damaged, flat, or loses air pressure. ***The spare tire/wheel may differ from the original equipment, and is intended for temporary use ONLY.***

To lower the spare tire:

- LOCATE the 1" access hole in the skirt metal on the door-side of your RV, approximately even with the spare tire, *See photo A, right*.
- At the frame *behind* the access hole, REMOVE the locking pin from the winch extension. *See photo B, right.*
- INSERT the crank handle, *then* TURN the winch extension ***counter-clockwise*** to lower the spare tire from the carrier.

To return spare tire to the stowed position:

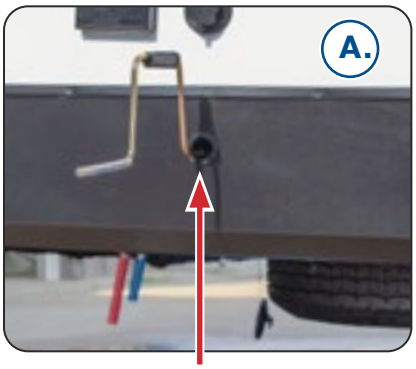
1. Place the tire underneath the spare tire carrier and thread the end of the winch inside the wheel hub opening and tire rim.
2. Use a manual crank handle or a socket wrench to turn the winch extension clockwise to raise the spare tire to the stowed position.
3. REPLACE the locking pin into the winch extension. See photo B, above.

NOTE: The spare tire must be raised high enough so the tire's sidewall firmly contacts the two angle brackets on the carrier ***and is torqued to a minimum of 25 ft-lbs (300 in-lbs).***

Tire Changing Basics

- ***Hydraulic Jack & Jack Stands* are customer supplied.**

1. *See* ***page 57,*** *Roadside Emergency.*
2. Block the wheels on the opposite side from the tire you wish to change. This will prevent accidental movement.
3. Loosen the wheel lugs BEFORE raising the RV.
4. Place a *Hydraulic Jack* on the frame close to the spring hanger. Raise the trailer until the tire clears the ground. ***NEVER attempt to use a stabilizer jack to lift the RV.***
5. Set up a *Jack Stand* under the frame just to the rear of the tire being changed, *then* change your tire.
6. Follow the Wheel Nut Torque and Wheel Installation instructions provided on the ***Next Page***.



Spare Tire Access Hole & Crank Handle Extension

⚠ WARNING

Before working underneath the RV, both the front and rear axles should be supported with jack stands. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

DO NOT use a power drill or impact wrench to operate the winch extension.

DO NOT continue to rotate winch extension after the tire is in its proper position.

Use of power tools and overextension of the winch can damage the winch or its cable, which could result in the spare tire dropping away from its stowed position. *A dropped tire can cause damage to the tire, tire carrier and/or the trailer.*

⚠ CAUTION

Maintain tension on winch cable during rewinding of the winch.

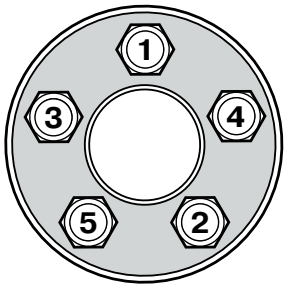
Failure to do so may cause winch cable to slack and unwind during transport.

This may cause damage to the tire carrier and/or trailer, and may cause damage or personal injury to other vehicles or persons during transport.

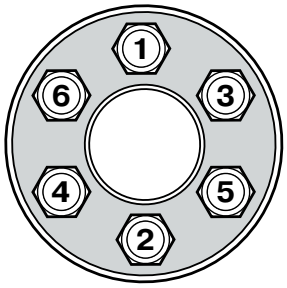
⚠WARNING

Always torque the wheel nuts to the specifications of the wheel manufacturer.

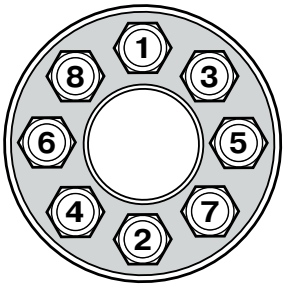
Over or under-torqued wheel nuts can cause the wheel to separate from the wheel mounting surface during operation, causing property damage, personal injury or loss of life.



5 - Lug Pattern



6 - Lug Pattern



8 - Lug Pattern

Wheel Nut Torque

- ***The lug nuts on your RV wheels <u>require</u> frequent torque maintenance.***
- *Torque* is the amount of rotating force applied to a fastener, such as a lug nut.

Your RV's axle and wheel assemblies are designed differently than those of a car. The RV's overall size, weight, and center of gravity subject the wheels to pressures unique to trailering. During normal cornering, the tires and wheels experience a considerable amount of stress called *Side-Load*.

- **ALWAYS use a properly calibrated torque wrench to confirm proper torque**.
- **ALWAYS check lug nut torque on each wheel before departure, regardless of how short the trip may be.**
- **DO NOT** allow *UNDER*-torque or *OVER*-torque on any wheel. Under or over-torque can be dangerous or cause damage.
- Tighten the lugs in the correct order for your RV's lug pattern shown in the diagram. (*Left*)

Find the Wheel Size, Material, & Stud Size for your RV on the Wheel Torque Requirement Table (Below)

Stud Size	Lug Nut Type	Final Torque Specifications	Wheel Size	Wheel Material
1/2"	Coned	90-120 ft. lbs.	14"/15"/16"	Steel
9/16"	Coned	120-140 ft. lbs.	16"	Steel
1/2"	Coned	90-100 ft. lbs.	14'/15"/16"	Aluminum
9/16"	Coned	120-140 ft. lbs.	16"	Aluminum
9/16"	Coned	140-170 ft. lbs.	17.5"	Aluminum

If Changing the Tire/Wheel:

- Start all lugs by hand until snug, *then* tighten the lugs in three (3) stages.

1st Stage - Tighten all lugs to 20-25 ft. lbs

2nd Stage - Tighten to 50% of Final Torque Specification

3rd Stage - Tighten to the Final Torque Specification.

- Determine the correct torque for each stage, and use the Final Torque Specification shown.

Roadside Emergency

A roadside emergency can happen at any time. ALWAYS carry an emergency kit with three red warning signs (*or indicators*) to display if necessary.

If you must make an emergency roadside stop:

- Pull off the road *as far as possible*.
- Turn ON the hazard warning flashers (*or hazard lights*) to alert other drivers.
- The hazard warning flashers warn passing drivers to approach and overtake your vehicle with caution.

Use the three red warning indicators (*signs, reflectors, lanterns, or road flares*) as follows:

1. Place the **1st** indicator **10 feet *behind*** the RV on the off-door side (*road side*).
2. Place the **2nd** indicator **100 feet *behind*** the RV in the center of the lane.
3. Place the **3rd** indicator **100 feet in *front*** of the RV in the center of the lane.

- ***10 feet* = 4 paces, *100 feet* = 40 paces**
- Curves and/or hills may affect the safe placement of the warning indicators.

FOR YOUR PERSONAL SAFETY in the event of a roadside emergency, *ALWAYS STAND*:

- **OFF of the road, *and***
- **AWAY from any traffic.**

Emergency Towing

If you require towing, please contact an emergency road service provider or a qualified service facility for assistance.

Tire Linc - TPMS Prep (customer supplied)

Your Momentum FW is pre-wired for the LCI Tire Linc® System. Tire Linc® is a tire pressure and temperature monitoring system (TPMS). The TPMS issues an alert via the Alert Indicator when a trailer's tire(s) pressure or temperature falls out of the programmable range.

Tire Linc Repeater Dock

Please contact your Grand Design RV Dealer for more information and Ordering.

*Scan the **QR Code**,above, with your tablet or smart-phone to download the OneControl® Touch Panel (OCTP) Owner's Manual*

OneControl® Touch Panel (OCTP) Owner's Manual is found in your Owner Information Package.

OneControl® Touch Panel
(If So Equipped)

The OneControl® Touch Panel (OCTP) enables users to access devices like slides, awnings, lights and more from inside the RV. Control and monitoring capabilities vary based on the OneControl compatible accessories added by the RV's OEM, dealer, or end-user.

BEFORE using your *OneControl® System*: Please read and understand the *OneControl® Touch Panel Owner's Manual* found in your *Owner Information Package*. *See **photo**, lower left*.

Operation

1. Locate your OneControl® Touch Panel.
2. ***Power On/Off*** –
   When power is supplied to the RV's OneControl System, the OCTP may turn ON automatically or require manual activation.
   - If the OneControl® Touch Panel was turned OFF via the power button (Fig. 1A), then it will ***not*** turn ON automatically.
   - The OCTP may be powered or OFF using the power button (Fig. 1A) located on the bottom edge.
3. To turn ON the OCTP, PRESS and RELEASE the power button (Fig. 1A).

NOTE: It will take a few moments to start up and load the system.

The OneControl® Touch Panel Home Screen

Towing & Leveling

To improve safe driving and help protect against injury, please follow these recommendations:

- Keep the RV and tow vehicle tires properly inflated, *and REPLACE* the tires BEFORE they are excessively worn.
- ALWAYS wear your seatbelt and obey all traffic laws.
  - DO NOT exceed the posted speed limit.
  - Many states have *lower* speed limits for tow vehicle/RV combinations.
- ALWAYS be a courteous and alert driver.
  - Watch out for other drivers, bicyclists and pedestrians.
  - Pay attention to traffic and road conditions.
  - BEFORE changing lanes, check the outside rearview mirrors for other vehicles and use your turn signals.
  - Leave room for sudden braking and other unexpected events.
- ALWAYS use the daytime running lights on your tow vehicle to increase visibility to other drivers.
- NEVER drive when you are sleepy or tired.
- NEVER drive when alcohol, drugs or medication have affected your judgment, reflexes or alertness.
- Adverse weather conditions or extreme terrain may affect your tow vehicle's performance and handling.
  - DO NOT use the tow vehicle's cruise control on icy, wet, or winding roads; or any other traffic situations where a constant speed could be dangerous.

Propane Safety

- ALWAYS shut OFF the propane system at the LP cylinder BEFORE you travel.
- If you drive with the propane system ON, the dangers are greatly increased in the event of an accident or fire.
- While you travel, most refrigerators will keep food cold or frozen for eight hours without running.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT leave children or pets unsupervised in or around the RV (even if children are secured by a child restraint system).

They could:

- Injure themselves on parts of the RV.
- Unlock and open the entry door or open the emergency exit window and possibly injure other person(s) or damage property.
- Get out of the RV and injure themselves or they could be injured by passing vehicles.
- Be seriously or even fatally injured by prolonged exposure to extreme heat or cold.

⚠WARNING

You must observe the law if you are driving when operating a cell phone in your tow vehicle. If it is permitted to operate a cell phone while the tow vehicle is in motion, you must only operate it when road and traffic conditions permit. You may otherwise be distracted from the traffic conditions, cause an accident and injure yourself and others.

RV Driving Schools & Seminars

If you have any concerns about driving while towing a RV, consult an expert for specific RV driver education. There are private RV schools and some RV owner's organizations that offer driving seminars. The schedules and locations of the various RV driver education seminars and schools can be researched through RV-related publications and websites.

Please use caution when using websites as a resource tool. Verify the information is from a credited and reliable source in the RV industry, and that it pertains to your specific RV. If you have any doubt, contact your dealer for assistance.

RV Braking System

To maintain proper braking performance, both the RV and tow vehicle brakes *must* be used together. The RV brakes are designed to work with your tow vehicle brakes. Separate use of the braking systems will cause accelerated wear and damage.

For best performance and increased durability, AFTER the initial break-in period, your brake shoes *must* be adjusted accurately. When your RV is new, it is impossible to adjust the brake shoes precisely. It takes approximately 1,000 miles and/or 50 medium to heavy stops to *burnish fit* or *seat* the shoes to the brake drum.

Braking system components include:

- Tow Vehicle Battery
- Brake Controller
- Wire Harness/Connector Plug
- Auxiliary Batteries, *also see Electrical System*
- Breakaway Switch

If your RV is equipped with Hydraulic Disc Brakes:

BEFORE towing your RV :

- You ***must*** check the compatibility with your tow vehicle's integrated brake controller on the *Tow Vehicle* and *After Market Trailer Brake Controller Compatibility*** chart.
- Read the entire Trailer Brake Actuator owner's manual for all safety warnings and detailed operating instructions.
- This manual is included in your *Owner Information Package*.

For further information, Contact your dealer or Grand Design Customer Service.

Tow Vehicle Battery

The tow vehicle battery is the primary source of power for your RV's brake operation. To ensure available power when needed, keep your tow vehicle battery and charging system working properly.

Battery Isolator (Customer Supplied)

You may want to install a *battery isolator* on your tow vehicle. A *battery isolator* is a device that:

- Receives current from the tow vehicle alternator to independently charge both the RV auxiliary battery and the tow vehicle battery.
- Prevents the RV from draining your tow vehicle battery (so you can start your tow vehicle engine).

Your dealer can assist you with the selection, purchase and installation of this aftermarket part.

Brake Controller (Customer Supplied)

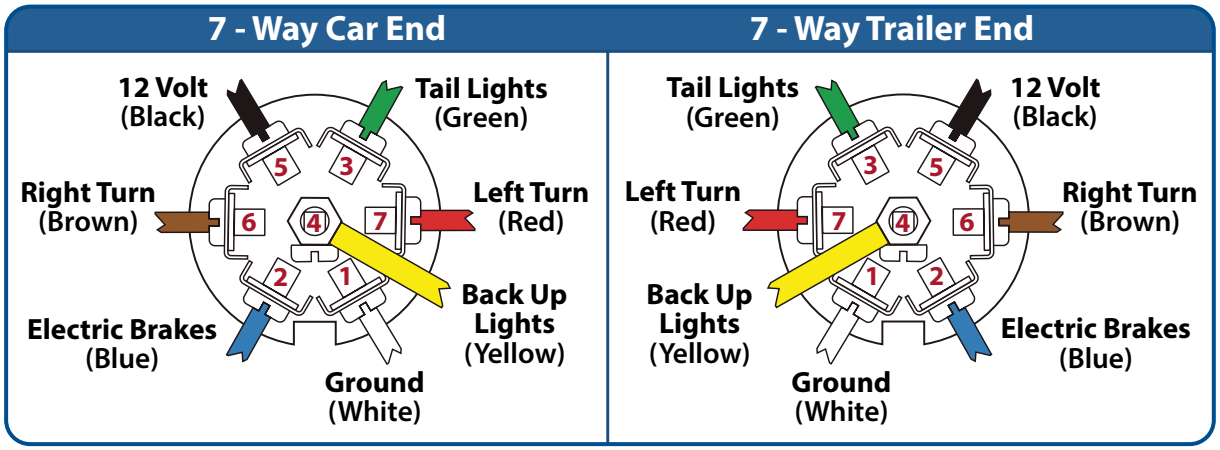
The brake controller should be installed in the tow vehicle to work in conjunction with the RV electric brakes. Consult with your dealer or the brake controller OEM to decide what is right for your towing combination.

7-Way Wire Harness/Connector Plug

The *7-Way Wire Harness/Connector Plug* is wired into your FW to connect electrical power from the tow vehicle for travel. This supplies power to the RV brakes, tail lights, clearance lights, turn signals, brake lights, etc. Wiring to operate your brakes must be the same size in both the tow vehicle and RV.

Maintenance

Corrosion may build up with extended use. CLEAN your *Connector Plug* as needed to ensure good electrical contact. INSPECT the *7-Way Wire Harness/Connector Plug* periodically for cracking and wear to make sure connections stay protected from the elements as you travel. REPLACE if cracked or broken.



ABS - Anti-Lock Braking System

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel is equipped with the Dexter Tow Assist® system providing Anti-Lock Braking (ABS), Sway Mitigation, and a towable odometer.

BEFORE using your *Tow Assist® System*: Please read and understand the *Dexter Tow Assist® Owner's Manual* found in your *Owner Information Package*. *See photo, right*.

Tow Assist Compatibility Guidelines

It is important to download and read the Tow Assist Compatibility Guidelines. This document includes the table *below, left*.

- Information on Tow Assist Compatibility Guidelines are available in instruction sheet **059-A23-00** available at www.**dexteraxle**.com

⚠ CAUTION

It is the responsibility of the end user to ensure that their electric brake controller is compatible with the Dexter Tow Assist System.

Dexter attempts to provide compatibility with most controllers available but is unable to anticipate design changes that might be introduced by the various controller manufacturers.

After Market Trailer Brake Controller Compatibility**

After market Brake Controllers		
Manufacturer	**Model**	**Compatible**
Dexter®	Predator DX2®	Yes
Tekonsha®	Primus IQ™	Yes
	Prodigy P2®	Yes
	Prodigy P3®	Yes
	Sentinel™	No
	Voyager®	No*
Hayes	Energize III®	Yes
	Endeavour®	Yes
	G2 Brake Boss®	Yes
	Genesis®	No*
Red Arc®	Tow-Pro (EBRH-ACC)	Yes
	Tow-Pro Elite (EBRH-ACC V2)	Yes
Hopkins®	Agility™	Yes
	Insight™	Yes
GSL	RBC-12	Yes
	XLE-12	Yes
Hayman Reese	Compact IQ®	Yes
Curt™	Tri-flex™	Yes

Vehicle Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Compatibility**

GM	High Confidence
Ford	High Confidence
Dodge	High Confidence
Toyota	High Confidence
Nissan	Untested

* Compatible with external simulated load
**As of January 2021

Operation

The Tow Assist system works in collaboration with an in-vehicle Electric Trailer Brake Controller to improve the safety and stability of trailer braking. The primary trailer braking control remains the responsibility of the Electric Brake Controller and the vehicle driver. Tow Assist will intervene when it determines the safety of braking is compromised and the system can improve the situation.

The goal of the Tow Assist system is to improve the safety of the trailer braking and stability, while also ensuring trailer braking efficiency or reliability is not reduced.

The Tow Assist® System requires a 7-way (or similar) tow vehicle connector. This connector must have Auxiliary +12V Power wired at position 4, which is typically a black wire. This connection is how the Tow Assist system is powered. The system will not work without power from this connection. Your tow vehicle may have the 7-way connector without the +12v terminal activated. Please consult your vehicle's owner's manual or a qualified service center to verify that your connector has the proper power connection.

Dexter Phone App

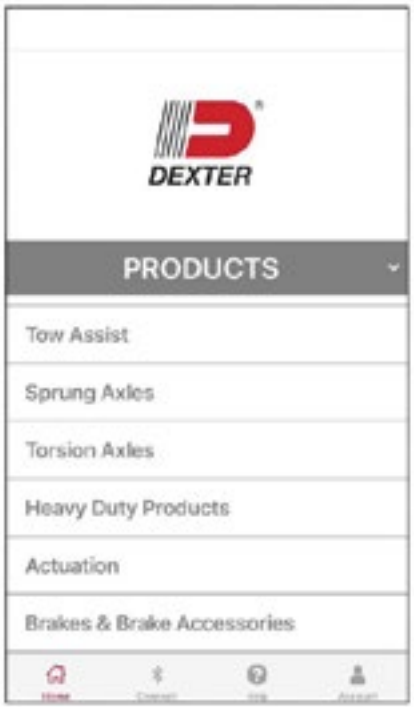
The Dexter app has many features, including access to product information, manuals, instructions, and a dedicated section for the Tow Assist system. The app is available in both Google Play™ store or the Apple App Store®.

The Tow Assist interface portion of the app allows users to:

- Create and manage account
- Manage multiple trailers
- Read trailer odometer
- Diagnose and learn about system faults
- Save information about readings and faults
- Reset the Tow Assist Controller (ECU)

The Tow Assist portion of the phone app requires the supplied Bluetooth communication adapter (*Dexter Part #* ***058-037-00***) to communicate with the Tow Assist System. Plug the Bluetooth adapter into the OBD2 harness connector located near the front of your trailer. Contact your trailer manufacturer if the OBD2 connector if it is not easily visible. See the images below for reference. Remove the adapter when not in use to protect from environmental extremes.

Please note that the app is meant to read information from the Tow Assist ECU only. Only the trailer manufacturer can write to the ECU with specialized software.



The Dexter Tow Assist® Owner's Manual is found in your Owner Information Package.

Scan the ***QR Code****,above, with your tablet or smart-phone to download the Tow Assist® Owner's Manual*

⚠WARNING

Be certain there is enough "slack" in the lanyard (cable) to accommodate a tight radius turn. Failure to do so may result in the breakaway pins pulling out of the housing causing the brakes to engage while towing. This could result in significant damage.

⚠WARNING

NEVER use the breakaway switch and trailer brake system as a parking brake. Doing so would create a high amp draw on the battery and converter.

This can cause non-warranty damage to the breakaway switch, wiring, & connectors.

⚠WARNING

The rating of the hitch package purchased should be equal to (or greater than) the RV's GVWR and Pin Box rating.

DO NOT remove the following label from the pin box:

SAFETY BREAK-AWAY SWITCH WILL NOT OPERATE
unless connected to a power source equivalent to or greater than an automotive type 12 volt, 12 amp hour wet-cell battery.

Breakaway Switch

The breakaway switch is located by the FW pin box. It is a crucial part of the RV braking system. If the RV becomes detached from the tow vehicle, the lanyard pulls the pin from the breakaway switch, which automatically activates the RV brakes.

- While hitching the RV, ALWAYS secure the breakaway switch lanyard to a permanent part of the tow vehicle.
- Check that your auxiliary battery (customer supplied) is correctly installed, and fully charged BEFORE travel.

An AUXILIARY BATTERY (customer supplied) MUST be installed to provide power to the breakaway switch.

Fifth Wheel (FW) Pin Box Hitch

Hitch selection is important because it affects the towing and handling characteristics of your RV. There are many kinds of hitches available for various uses and assuring that you have the correct hitch installed is critical to a safe towing experience. The factory installed FW pin box is not interchangeable.

Ask your dealer about the proper class and type of hitch you need to purchase for your individual tow vehicle/RV combination. A FW requires a pin box hitch bolted directly to the floor of the truck box through the frame. Before selecting a hitch, you must know your GVWR and pin box rating.

Fifth wheel pin box height

There is no recommended hitch height for fifth wheels; usually the FW pin box is adjustable for variance in trucks and truck suspension systems. ADJUST the *Hitch Assembly* so that your tow vehicle and your FW are essentially level.

- A ***high*** hitch will transfer weight behind the axles and cause the vehicle to fishtail.
- A ***low*** hitch will transfer additional weight to the hitch.

To adjust the weight distributing hitch to the proper height, Please refer to the hitch manufacturer instructions.

Fifth Wheel Hitching Procedure

The Fifth Wheel hitching procedure (below) becomes easier with practice. To safely hook up your FW to your tow vehicle, use the following steps:

1. ALWAYS use wheel chocks to block the trailer wheels.
2. Check that your hitch lever is in the *OPEN* (or *cocked*) position.
   - *Unless it is designed to open automatically.*
3. Adjust the FW pin to the proper height.
4. OPEN the truck tailgate.
   - *Unless your truck is equipped with a tailgate designed to accommodate a FW hitch.*
5. Back up your truck so the hitch encircles the FW pin.
6. Making gentle contact of the hitch saddle against the pin will cause the mechanism to close.
7. Secure the hitch lever as specified by the manufacturer.
   - Shift the truck into drive, *but*
   - **DO NOT** press on the accelerator.
   - *BUMP* the hitch to make sure it is LOCKED.
8. Check that the FW landing legs are fully RETRACTED.
9. Attach the breakaway switch cable to the tow vehicle. Leave enough slack to accommodate tight turns.
10. Connect the 7-way wire harness from the FW to your tow vehicle and secure in the travel position.
11. Walk around the RV to verify the exterior lights are working correctly,
12. Remove the wheel chocks from the trailer wheels.

⚠WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to go under the RV while it is being lifted and/or towed.

NOTICE

The FW landing legs must be fully retracted before moving or towing the RV to prevent damage.

⚠WARNING

Towing items behind RV or overloading the rear will void the warranty and may result in damage to the RV or add-on items, towing difficulties, property damage and/or personal injury.

⚠WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to go under the RV while it is being lifted and/or towed.

Towing the RV

Braking & Stopping Distance

Towing an RV greatly increases your stopping distance. Practice braking in a large parking lot (where it is permissible) to become familiar with your RV's stopping distance before driving in traffic.

- AVOID conditions that require excessive and prolonged use of your brakes. *Smooth starts* and *easing to a stop* will save wear and tear on your RV / tow vehicle combination.

When descending a long hill, drop into a lower gear (or a lower range, if you have automatic transmission). This allows your tow vehicle's engine and transmission to help control your speed which can extend brake life.

- Apply and release the brakes at short intervals to give them a chance to cool.
- Driving through deep water may get the brakes wet, increasing stopping distance or causing the vehicle to pull to one side.
  - ***DO NOT operate the vehicle if a difference in braking efficiency is noticeable***. Check the RV's brake operation in a safe area to be sure they have not been affected.

Weight and Clearance Limits

In order to obey all posted *Weight and Clearance Limits*, you ***must*** ALWAYS know the **Gross Weight** and **Total Height** of your RV/tow vehicle combination.

- ALWAYS include the roof air conditioners, TV antennas, and floodlights as they may cause clearance problems under some tunnels, canopies or hanging signs.
- Some bridges, older ones in particular, may not support the weight of your RV/tow vehicle combination.

Road Conditions

ALWAYS adjust your driving for road conditions.

- Slow way down, *then* release your brakes before crossing railroad tracks.
- Sudden acceleration or deceleration on a wet or icy roads can cause skidding and loss of control.
- Slow down well in advance of any bumps or dips in the road to reduce jolting your RV / tow vehicle combination.
- Drive over any uneven surfaces slowly and make sure to have passed them *completely* before accelerating.

Passenger Safety

- **DO NOT allow anyone to ride inside as a passenger while your RV is in motion.**
- This practice is against the law in several states.

Turning Corners

While making a turn:

- The RV **does NOT** follow the path of your *Tow Vehicle.*
- The RV will make a *TIGHTER* turn than your *Tow Vehicle*.

You ***must*** *compensate* for this action by carefully pulling the tow vehicle out into the intersection further than you normally would so that the RV clears the curb (or any parked vehicles along the curb).

Passing

While towing an RV, it takes longer to reach highway speeds. Allow additional time to safely overtake and pass vehicles.

- Changing lanes in traffic also takes longer due to the extra length of your RV / tow vehicle combination.
- ALWAYS drive with caution and avoid situations that may require quickly changing your speed or your lane.

Backing Up

If there are no pull through sites at your camping destination, choose a level site and back in carefully. BEFORE you park, exit your tow vehicle, and inspect that site conditions are satisfactory.

- Check that you have plenty of vehicle clearance.
- Check that your path is free of obstacles. (*low-hanging tree limbs, posts, large rocks*)
- Try to choose a site that is on the driver's side, so that you can easily see the rear of the RV.
- A site on the passenger side is more difficult, since you back into the site on your blind side.
- Position your tow vehicle and RV for backing into the site.
- Back up the RV slowly. Watch your tow vehicle mirrors and *Back Up Camera* (customer supplied) carefully to help you guide the RV into the site.
- Have another person outside the RV to assist you until the RV is parked in the desired position.

⚠WARNING

- When making a turn, check the road clearance and be aware of others.
- Have someone help guide you out of a difficult parking space or traffic pattern.
- Swerves and sharp turns, especially at high speeds, could result in loss of control of the RV.

If the parking spot is on asphalt on a very hot day or on dirt and/or gravel, a block of wood under each jack leg can be used to spread the load and reduce the possibility of the leg sinking into the surface.

Towing the RV, Continued

Parking

Once the RV is in your desired location:

1. Set the tow vehicle parking brake.
2. Turn OFF the ignition switch.
3. Go outside and block the RV wheels securely with wheel chocks.
   - *The wheel chocks can be wood blocks or purchased items as long as they prevent the RV from rolling.*

Unhitching from the Tow Vehicle

1. Choose a mostly level place to park, and pull the RV into the site.
2. Block the wheels to keep the RV from rolling.
3. LOWER the landing legs to stabilize the RV.
   - *For proper operation, it is important to follow the manufacturer's instructions.*
4. Disconnect the *wire harness/7-Way Plug*.
5. Disconnect the *Breakaway Switch Lanyard* (*cable*).
6. OPEN the truck tailgate.
   - *Unless your truck is equipped with a tailgate designed to accommodate a FW hitch.*
7. Shift your truck into reverse, *but* **DO NOT press on the accelerator.**
   - This moves the kingpin off the locking bar, so that it can be disengaged.
8. Apply the brakes, *then* Set your parking brake.
9. Disengage the locking bar, *then* Unhitch the RV.
10. Pull away your tow vehicle.
11. Level the RV (front to back) by adjusting the fifth-wheel height.

Leveling the RV

Please read and understand the Leveling System instructions in your *OneControl® Touch Panel Owner's Manual* found in your *Owner Information Package.*

- *See **page 58**, ONEControl® Touch Panel*

With the unit parked, the next step is to level your RV.

- A small level should be used in the refrigerator, and on the counter top or floor to confirm the RV is level.

Leveling your RV is important

- The refrigerator (and other appliances) are designed to perform best when the RV is level.
- The water system is designed to drain properly when the RV is level.
- Sleeping and walking inside is more comfortable when the RV is level.

BEFORE you operate the hydraulic leveling system ALWAYS make sure that:

1. The RV is parked on a reasonably level surface.
2. The tow vehicle is disengaged from the RV.
3. All persons, pets and property are clear of the RV while the leveling system is in operation.

Maintenance

1. Every month, check the fluid level. With the legs and slideouts ***retracted***, the fluid should be within ¼ inch of the fill spout lip.
2. ALWAYS ***retract*** the leveling legs (and slideouts) BEFORE adding fluid to the reservoir.

DO NOT fill the reservoir with the legs (or slideouts) *extended*, or it will overflow when they are *retracted*.

3. Inspect and clean all pump unit electrical connections every 12 months.
4. Remove dirt and road debris from the leveling gear as needed.
5. Leveling legs that stay in the extended position for long periods require protection from the elements.

- Spray the exposed landing gear rod with a silicone lubricant every three (3) months.
- If your RV is located in a salty environment, spray the rods with a silicone lubricant every four to six (4-6) weeks.

Leveling controls on the ONEControl® Touch Panel.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT USE THE FW LANDING LEGS TO SUPPORT THE TOW VEHICLE WEIGHT.

The FW landing legs are designed to bear the front loaded weight of the RV only.

NOTICE

Ensure that the RV is level before operating the slideout room.

Water leaks and other problems could result if the slideout is operated without leveling the RV.

NOTICE

The landing legs may bind in overload conditions, resulting in premature wear of the drive gear and stripping of the gear. Premature gear wear will also occur with excessive clutching of the motor - this occurs at maximum extension and retraction. Once clutch noise is heard, release the landing leg control switch.

Grand Design Compass Connect® App

The *Grand Design Compass Connect®* application allows you to control the leveling system, slide-outs, awnings and lighting on your RV with your smart phone or tablet. *Also See* ***page 115.***

- Please read the *Compass Connect®* manual found in your *Owner Information Package* before downloading and using the *Grand Design Compass Connect®* app.

Leveling Instructions Labels

To operate the hydraulic leveling system, read and follow the instructions printed on the manufacturer's instruction labels mounted with the manual leveling controls on the inside of the off-door side (ODS) forward compartment door.

DO NOT remove these labels from the inside of the forward, off-door side (ODS) compartment door:

NOTICE

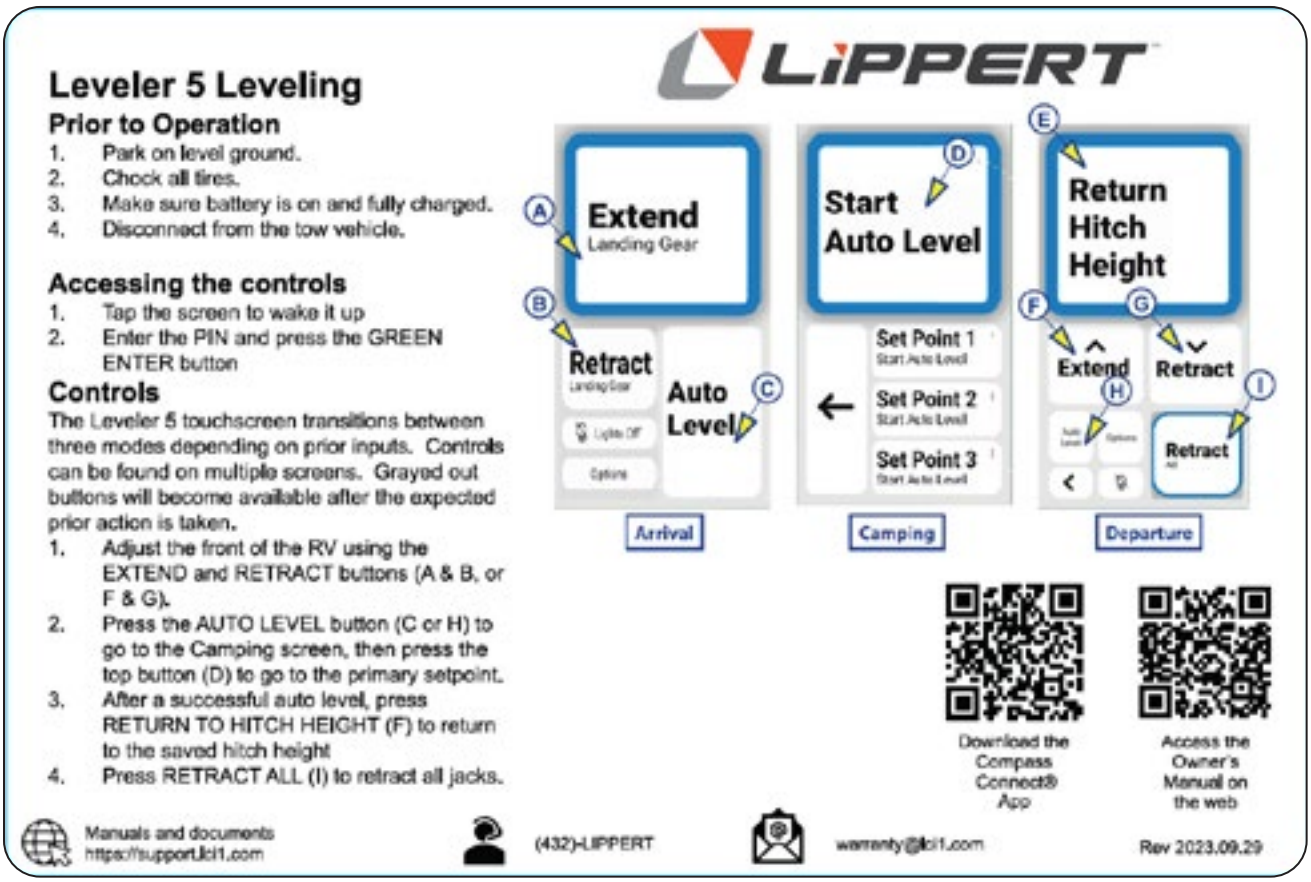
For optimum performance, the Titan hydraulic system requires a fully charged RV auxiliary battery be properly connected to the RV.

Failure to do so will result in non-warranty damage.

LEVEL-UP COLD WEATHER OPERATION

When operating in temperatures below 30° F, inconsistent performance may occur in the auto retract mode. The combination of low battery and low temps may cause the system to turn off before the jacks are fully retracted. If this should happen, operate the system in the manual mode to get the jacks to fully retract.

When operating in any mode and under all conditions, ALWAYS check to see if the jacks are fully retracted before starting to travel.



Lippert Titan Hydraulic Leveling System™
(Previously Called BaseCamp™)

TITAN LEVELING SYSTEMS™ FOR 5TH WHEEL

OWNER'S MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction **2**
Components 3
Additional Information Sources **3**
Safety **4**
Preparation **5**
Prior to Operation **5**
Operation **5**
Basic Touchscreen Operation 5
Controller Lockout 6
Operating the Touchscreen 7
Basic Jack Operation 8
Unhitching Instructions 8
Auto Level Sequence 9
Hitch Recognition 10
Options **11**
Current Level 11
Manual Mode 11
Entering a Custom Set Point 12
Light Controls 13
Dark Theme 13
Smart Device Pairing **14**
Troubleshooting **15**
Error Messages 15
Set Point Calibration 18
Manual Override 18
Maintenance **19**
Fluid Recommendation 19
Preventive Maintenance 19
Wiring Diagram **20**
Plumbing Diagram **21**
Notes **22**

Introduction

The Titan Leveling Systems™ Hydraulic Leveling System includes six points of contact utilizing aluminum jacks and a multi-valve system. A 12V DC electric motor drives a hydraulic pump that moves fluid through a system of hoses, fittings and jacks to level and stabilize the trailer.
Mechanical portions of the Titan Leveling Systems are replaceable.

Components

1. Jacks
   A. Rated at a lifting capacity for the trailer.
   B. Standard 9-inch diameter (63.5 square inch) foot pad on a ball swivel for maximum surface contact on all surfaces.
   C. Operational Powered from a 12V DC Motor/Pump assembly
2. Motor/Pump Assembly
   A. 12V DC motor
   B. Hydraulic fluid reservoir tank
   C. Control valve manifold
   D. Solenoid valve
3. System Controls
   E. Touchscreen can be operated in manual mode or fully automatic mode.

Contact Lippert to obtain replacement parts.

Additional Information Sources

Additional information about this product can be obtained from lci1.com/support or by downloading the free LippertNOW app. The app is available on Apple App Store® for iPhone® and iPad® and also on Google Play™ for Android™ users.
App Store®, iPhone®, and iPad® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.
Google Play™ and Android™ are trademarks of Google Inc.

NOTE: Images used in this document are for reference only when assembling, installing and/or operating this product. Actual appearance of provided and/or purchased parts and assemblies may differ.

For information on the assembly or individual components of this product, please visit:
https://support.lci1.com/lippert-towable-titan-leveling-system.

Safety

Read and understand all instructions before installing or operating this product. Adhere to all safety labels.

This manual provides general instructions. Many variables can change the circumstances of the instructions, i.e., the degree of difficulty, operation and ability of the individual performing the instructions. This manual cannot begin to plot out instructions for every possibility, but provides the general instructions, as necessary, for effectively interfacing with the device, product or system. Failure to correctly follow the provided instructions may result in death, serious personal injury, severe product and/or property damage, including voiding of the Lippert limited warranty.

⚠WARNING

The "WARNING" symbol above is a sign that a procedure has a safety risk involved and may cause death or serious personal injury if not performed safely and within the parameters set forth in this manual.

⚠WARNING

Failure to follow instructions provided in this manual may result in death, serious personal injury and/or severe product and property damage, including voiding of the component warranty.

⚠CAUTION

The “CAUTION” symbol above is a sign that a safety risk is involved and may cause personal injury and/or product or property damage if not safely adhered to and within the parameters set forth in this manual.

⚠CAUTION

Always wear eye protection when performing service, maintenance or installation procedures. Other safety equipment to consider would be hearing protection, gloves and possibly a full face shield, depending on the nature of the task.

The use of the Lippert Titan Leveling Systems 5th Wheel Leveling System to support the trailer for any reason other than which it is intended is prohibited by the Lippert Warranty. The Lippert Titan Leveling Systems 5th Wheel Leveling System is designed as a leveling system only and should not be used for any reason to provide service under the trailer, e.g. changing tires or servicing the leveling system.

Lippert recommends that a trained professional be employed to change the tires on the trailer. Any attempts to change tires or perform other service while trailer is supported by the Lippert Titan Leveling Systems 5th Wheel Leveling System could result in damage to the trailer and/or cause serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The 5th Wheel MUST be supported per manufacturer's recommendations before working underneath. Any attempts to change the tires, or perform other service, while 5th Wheel is supported solely by the Lippert Titan Leveling System could result in death or serious personal injury, severe product and/or property damage.

⚠WARNING

A fluid leak within a highly pressurized hydraulic system can cause serious skin-penetrating injuries. Wear appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE), such as long sleeves, gloves, protective eye wear or a full face shield, when performing service or maintenance to the 5th Wheel.

⚠CAUTION

Moving parts can pinch, crush or cut. Keep clear and use caution.

Preparation

1. Make sure the 5th Wheel is parked on a reasonably level surface.
2. Clear all jack landing locations of debris and obstructions. Locations should also be free of depressions.
3. When parking the 5th Wheel on extremely soft surfaces, utilize load distribution pads under each jack.
4. Make sure the battery of the 5th Wheel is fully charged or that the 5th Wheel is plugged into shore power prior to attempting to operate the system.

NOTE: Titan Leveling Systems require a minimum of 12V DC from the battery for proper operation.

Prior to Operation

The leveling system shall only be operated under the following conditions:

1. The trailer is parked on a reasonably level surface.
2. Make sure all persons, pets and property are clear of the trailer while the LCD 5th Wheel Leveling system is in operation.
3. Make sure the battery of the trailer is fully charged or that the trailer is plugged into shore power prior to attempting to operate the system. The automatic leveling system requires a minimum of 12V DC from the battery for operation.

Operation

All controls can be operated by the touchscreen on the side of the trailer, and through the OneControl Mobile App for smart devices. The app is available on Apple App Store® for iPhone® and iPad® and also on Google Play™ for Android™ users. The app must first be paired to the trailer. See the Smart Device Pairing section for instructions.

Basic Touchscreen Operation

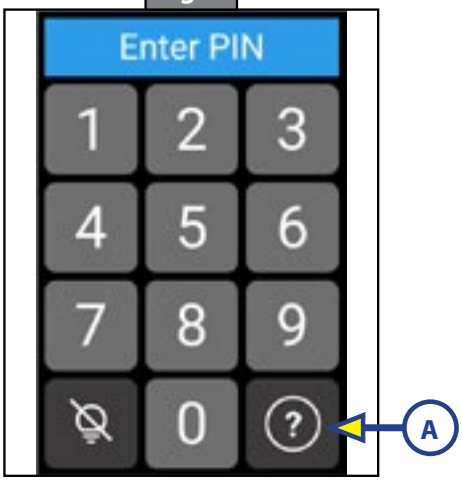
1. If latch is present, open the touchscreen by placing a finger underneath the latch (Fig. 1A) and pulling outwards. The door will unlatch (Fig. 2).

Fig. 1

Fig. 2

2. Upon waking the touchscreen for use, a PIN will need to be entered (Fig. 3).
   A. The default PIN is 5241. This can be found on the controller label (Fig. 17)
   B. Tapping the question mark (Fig. 3A) will show more information about the PIN.
3. If latch is present, close the touchscreen by closing the door and pressing the latch (Fig. 4A) toward the housing. The latch will snap closed.

Fig. 3



Controller Lockout

For safety, the leveling controller enters Lockout Mode when it detects the trailer brake has been applied. During Lockout Mode, extending jacks is prevented. Retracting jacks and the auto-retract function are allowed.

1. If an action is attempted that lockout is restricting, an error message will be displayed on the touchscreen (Fig. 4) or the mobile app (Fig. 5) to inform the operator that the action is not allowed.
2. To clear the lockout, enter the correct PIN on the touchscreen while the trailer brake is not active.
   A. The default PIN is 5241. This can be found on the controller label (Fig. 17).

Fig. 4

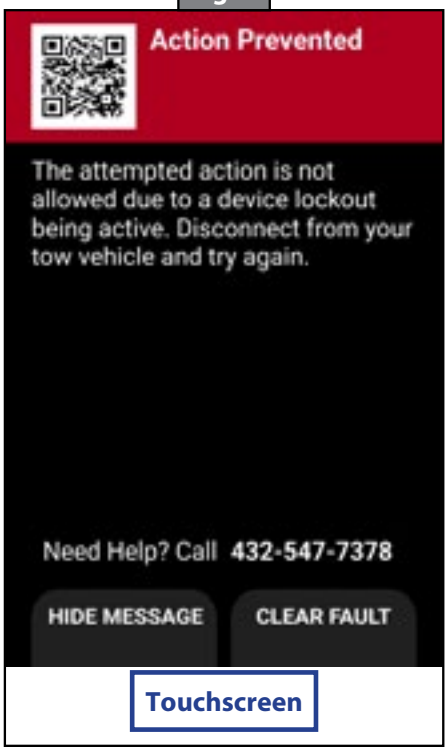
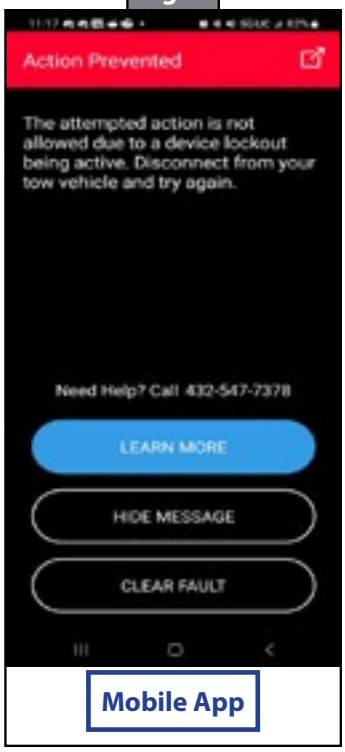


Fig. 5



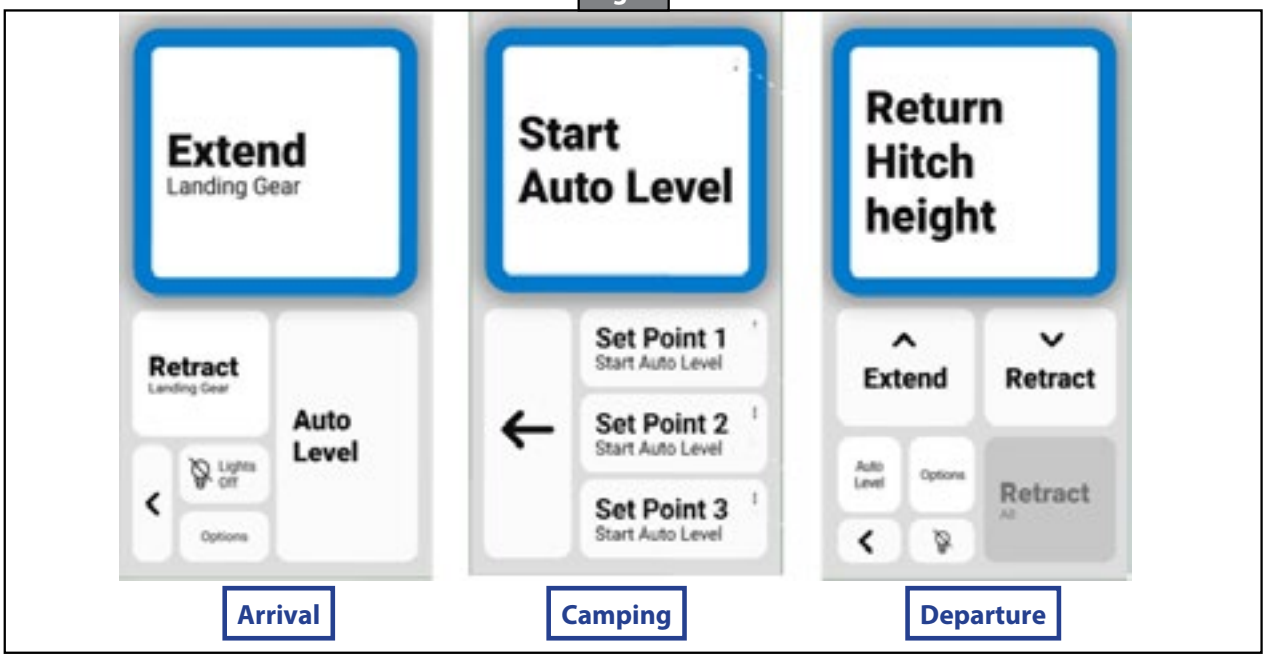
Operating the Touchscreen

The buttons on the touchscreen can be operated by pressing on the screen, or pressing and holding on the screen. The touchscreen is a pressure-responsive type. This allows the touchscreen to be operated while wearing gloves, and protects the leveling system against accidental operation.

The primary features are shown on three different screens: The ARRIVAL SCREEN, CAMPING SCREEN, and DEPARTURE SCREEN (Fig. 6). For convenience, only the controls primarily used during each phase of camping are shown. To prevent accidental operation, certain controls are grayed-out until other controls have been used.

The OPTIONS menu and JACK LIGHTS controls are available on all three of these screens (Fig. 6).

Fig. 6



Basic Jack Operation

1. Landing Gear Jacks
   A. Landing gear jacks can be operated any time the system is on, but not in AUTO MODE. Press and hold the EXTEND button (Fig. 7A), so that both the front or landing gear jacks can be extended.

NOTE: The RETRACT button will be grayed out until the landing gear jacks have been extended.

   B. Press and hold the RETRACT button (Fig. 7B), to retract the landing gear jacks together.
2. All Jacks
   A. All jacks operate when the system is performing an "AUTO OPERATION" such as AUTO LEVEL, RETURN TO HITCH HEIGHT, or RETRACT ALL.
   B. In "MANUAL MODE", the corner jacks can be operated independently or in pairs. Middle jacks operate in unison with the same-side rear jack.

NOTE: The default is AUTO OPERATION. MANUAL MODE can be selected through the OPTIONS menu.

   C. In "FAULT MODE" all jacks can be operated independently. FAULT MODE is only available when a fault is active.

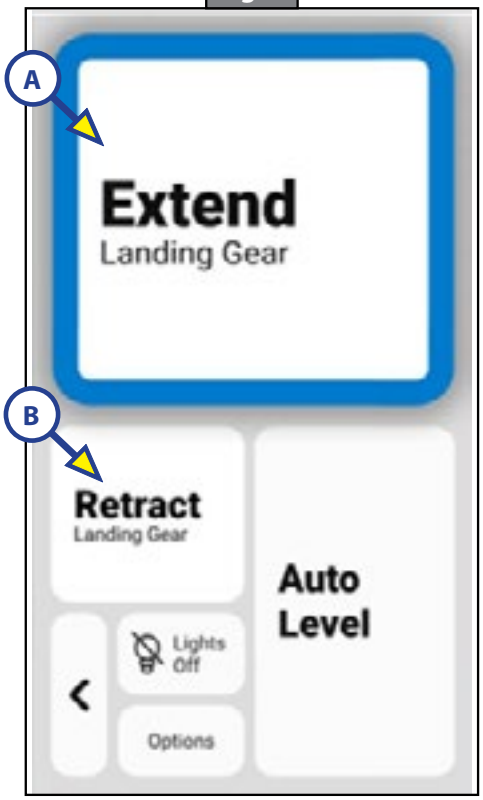
Unhitching Instructions

Unhitching from the tow vehicle is done from the ARRIVAL SCREEN (Fig. 6)

1. Tap the screen to wake the system up.
2. Press EXTEND (Fig. 7A) to extend the landing gear jacks to lift the front of the trailer to take the weight of the 5th wheel off of the hitch.
3. Uncouple the 5th wheel connection on the tow vehicle.
4. Pull the tow vehicle away a safe distance.

NOTE: To use the RETURN TO HITCH HEIGHT function later, make sure the front of the RV is above level before pressing the AUTO LEVEL button.

Fig. 7



Auto Level Sequence

NOTE: Prior to unhitching from the tow vehicle, make sure trailer is parked on a level surface and the tires are chocked.

1. After unhitching from tow vehicle, from the ARRIVAL SCREEN press AUTO LEVEL (Fig. 8A).

NOTE: Pressing any button during an Auto Level sequence will abort the auto leveling cycle.

NOTE: In order for the hitch recognition feature to function, the auto level sequence MUST be started with the front of the trailer above level.

NOTE: You can set up-to three custom set points for your leveling system. These will be set to the factory default unless changed.

2. On the CAMPING SCREEN, press START AUTO LEVEL (Fig. 9A), or if you desire a custom set point, press SET POINT 1, 2, or 3 and START (Fig. 9).
3. Front landing gear will retract, lowering the front of the unit below level, stopping, then lifting the front end to level the unit front-to-back.
4. The left side leveling jack extends and raises the roadside of the unit.
5. The right side leveling jack extends and raises the curbside of the unit, beginning side-to-side leveling.
6. The front landing gear extend to complete the leveling cycle.
7. Additional left-to-right or front-to-back leveling may occur, if the controller deems necessary.

NOTE: If the auto level sequence does not happen as stated above, check to ensure proper manual function in all zones.

Fig. 8

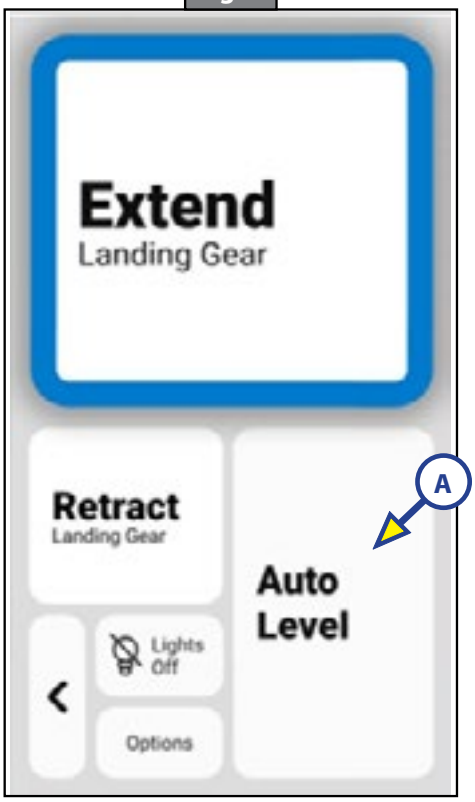
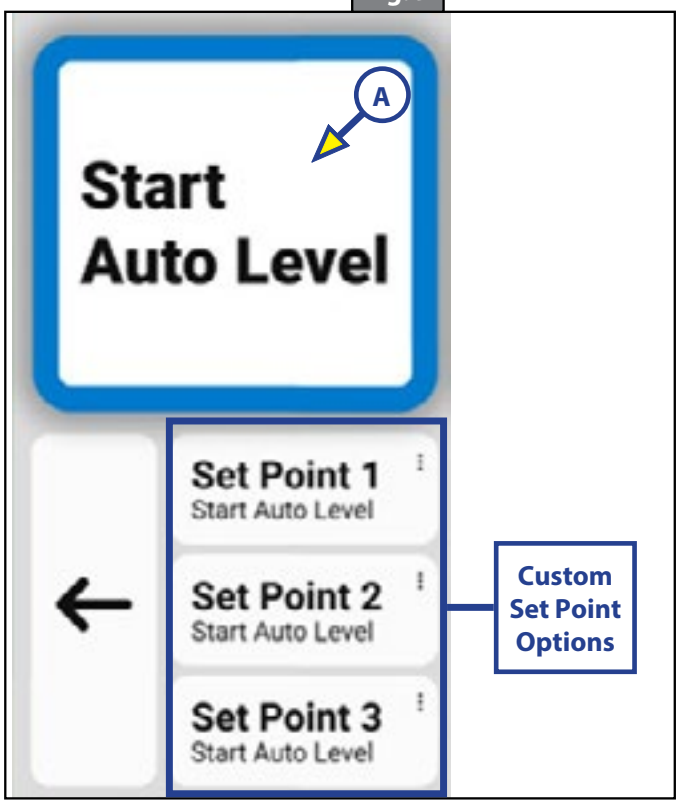


Fig. 9



Hitch Recognition

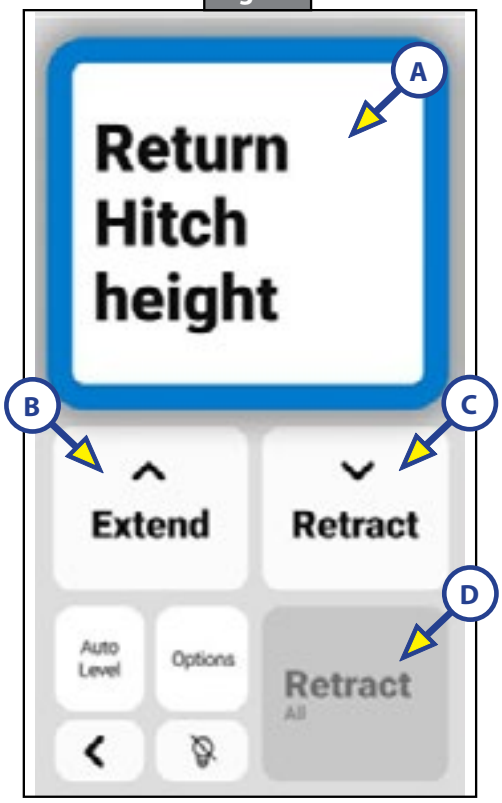
1. Tap the screen to turn on the touchscreen.
2. From the DEPARTURE screen (Fig. 10) press RETURN HITCH HEIGHT (Fig. 10A).
3. The front of the trailer will raise to the height where the auto level sequence was started.

NOTE: If the auto level sequence was started with the front of the trailer in a below-level condition, the hitch recognition will not function. For hitch recognition to function, the auto level sequence must be started with the front of the trailer above level.

4. Connect tow vehicle and make sure 5th Wheel and hitch are connected and locked.
5. Use the EXTEND (Fig. 10B) and RETRACT (Fig. 10C) buttons to put the weight of the RV onto the tow vehicle.
6. Press RETRACT ALL (Fig. 10D) to automatically retract all the jacks.

NOTE: You can stop the automatic RETRACT ALL sequence at any time by pressing the screen.

Fig. 10



Options

Press the OPTIONS button (Fig. 11A) to go to the options page (Fig. 12).

NOTE: ARRIVAL screen is shown (Fig. 11) for reference. The OPTIONS button is also available on the DEPARTURE screen (Fig. 10).

Current Level

Current Level (Fig. 12A) displays the current angle sensed by the controller, relative to the factory set point.

Manual Mode

MANUAL MODE (Fig. 12B) allows for the corner jacks to be operated independently or in pairs. Middle jacks operate in unison with the same-side rear jack.

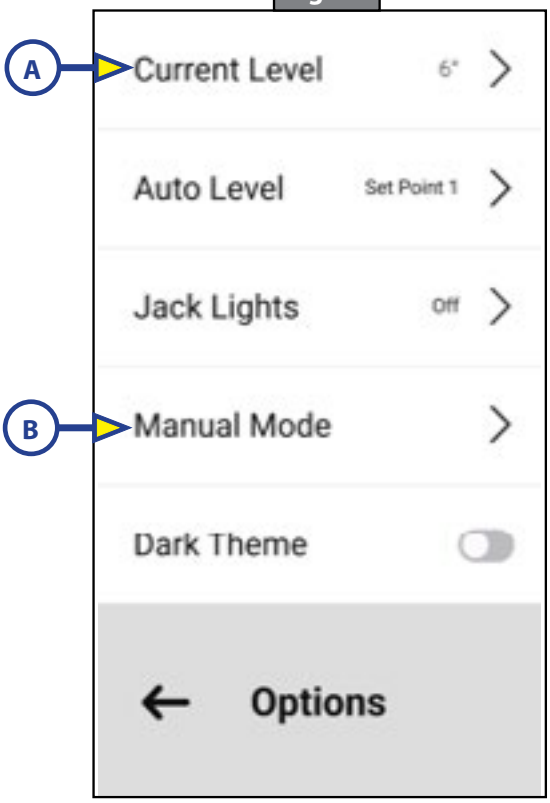
1. To enter MANUAL MODE, press OPTIONS, and select MANUAL MODE (Fig. 12B).
2. Select one or two jacks to control.

NOTE: Only adjacent corners can be selected.

3. Press extend or retract.
4. Press the X to exit from MANUAL MODE.

Fig. 11

Fig. 12



Entering a Custom Set Point

Custom set points may be used to create a small tilt in the trailer to allow the rain to run off in a preferred direction, to create a large tilt to assist with draining tanks, or for other creative reasons that can be customized.

NOTE: The leveling controller will not allow an angle in excess of 5°.

To enter custom set points, enter SET POINT CALIBRATION MODE. This can be done in the OPTIONS menu (Fig. 13) by selecting AUTO LEVEL (Fig. 13A) and the set point to adjust, or from the CAMPING SCREEN (Fig. 14) by tapping the upper right corner of the SET POINT 1, 2, or 3 buttons.

NOTE: The factory set point can be adjusted as well. The large START AUTO LEVEL button on the CAMPING SCREEN (Fig. 14A) will automatically level the vehicle to the factory set point.

1. In SET POINT CALIBRATION MODE, adjust the position of the trailer.
2. Once the desired position is achieved, press SET to record the new set point position.

To achieve a level trailer, it is best to place a level in the center of the trailer in the front-to-back position and adjust the front and rear jacks in pairs until level first. Then, turn the level to the side-to-side position and adjust the position of the left and right jacks in pairs until level. Then confirm level in the front-to-back position again.

Fig. 13

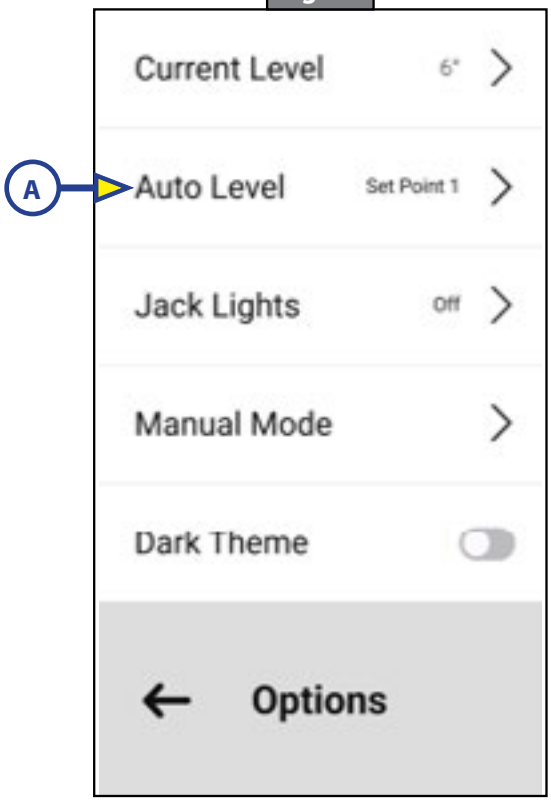


Fig. 14

Light Controls

Press the LIGHTS ON/OFF button on any screen to toggle the lights on and off. (Fig. 11B).

To adjust the brightness of the lights, or to adjust the auto-off timer, enter the OPTIONS (Fig. 15) menu and select JACK LIGHTS (Fig. 15A).

NOTE: If the lights were off, the lights will automatically turn on to the selected brightness (Fig. 16A) when adjusting the brightness. They will quickly turn off after the adjustment has been made, unless they are manually turned on.

The auto-off timer (Fig. 16B) will automatically turn your lights off after the selected period of time. The timer will restart after the lights have been turned on, whether manually, or automatically during auto-operations.

Dark Theme

The touchscreen can toggled between Light and Dark Theme by tapping the Dark Theme toggle button (Fig. 15B).

Fig. 15

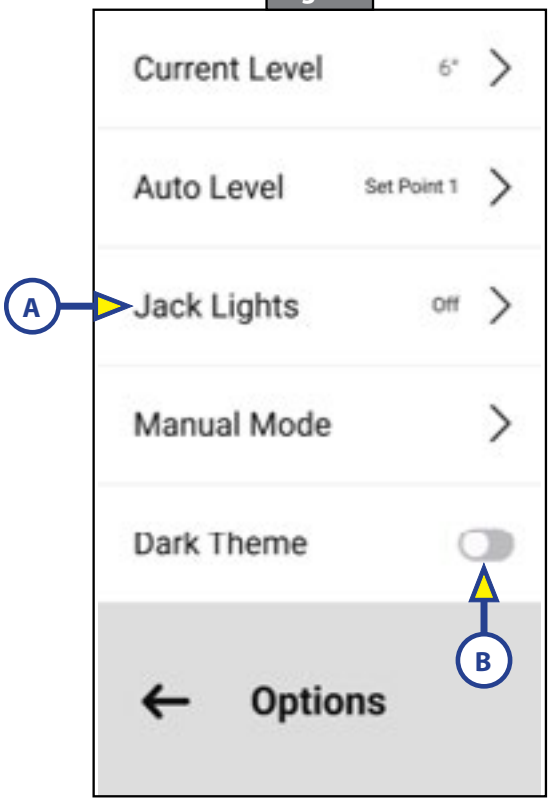
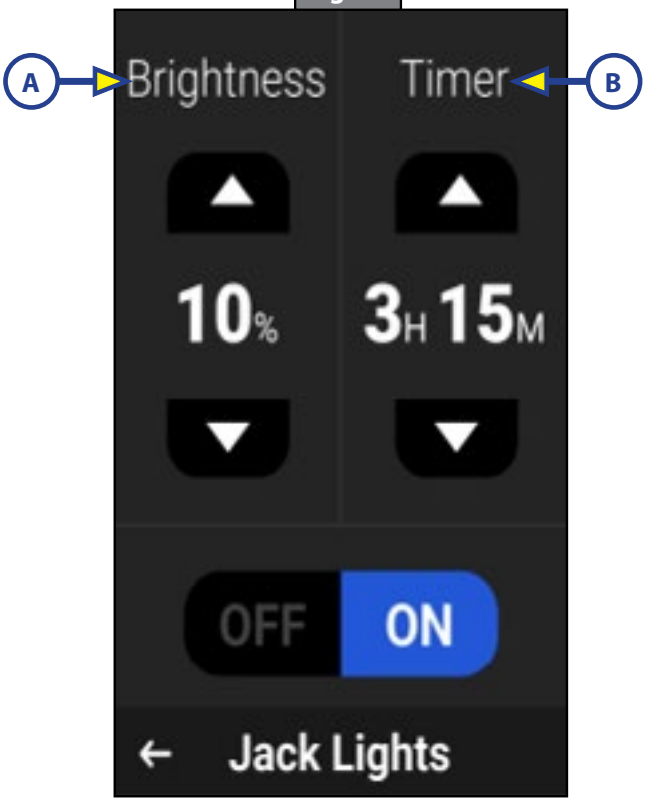


Fig. 16



Smart Device Pairing

Trailers equipped with Lippert OneControl will show leveling controls in the OneControl system. Pair a mobile smart device to the OneControl system and it will appear under the Leveling heading. For more information on OneControl visit: https://support.lci1.com/onecontrol-wireless-formerly-myrv.

If the trailer is equipped with only leveling, a mobile smart device may be directly paired to the leveler using the Lippert OneControl app.

Pairing a mobile smart device:

1. Locate the PARING CODE of the leveler.
   A. The pairing code will likely be located on documentation supplied with your trailer. If not, it is located on the leveling controller (Fig. 17A). The leveling controller is typically located in the basement or pass-through.
2. Open the app and select the PLUS icon in the upper right.
3. Select SEARCH FOR DEVICES.
4. Select your Titan Leveling Systems leveling controller.
5. Enter the PAIRING CODE.
6. Leveling controls should now be visible in the OneControl Mobile App.

Fig. 17

Troubleshooting

Error Messages

When the leveling controller detects an error, it will be presented to the user on the screen, along with some instructions for troubleshooting when appropriate. Most faults (Fig. 18) will clear automatically when the fault condition no longer exists.

1. To hide the message while troubleshooting, press HIDE MESSAGE (Fig. 18A).
2. An error message can be viewed at any time by pressing the caution icon in the OPTIONS SCREEN (Fig. 19A).
3. A caution icon will appear next to options button on the main screens until the fault is cleared (Fig. 20A).
4. To manually clear the fault, press CLEAR FAULT (Fig. 18B).

NOTE: Some faults will remain until the fault condition no longer exists.

Fig. 18

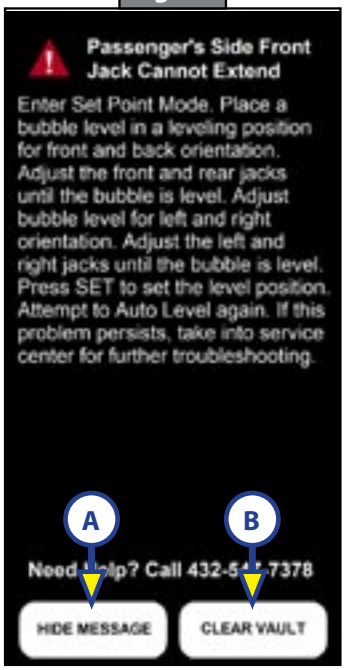
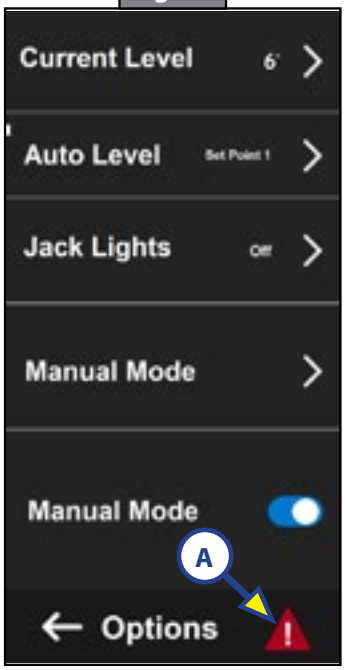


Fig. 19

Fig. 20



Error Message	What Should Be Done?
Controller Failure	Power cycle the leveler. If problem persists, return to a service center for replacement of the leveling controller.
Configuration Failure	Return to a service center for replacement of the leveling controller.
Low Battery Voltage Detected	Connect your battery to a charger, or connect your RV to shore power and ensure your converter is working. Give the battery time to charge before attempting again. Try again. If this problem persists, check the health of the battery.
No Auto Level Position Configured	To configure, enter Set Point mode. Place a bubble level on the RV floor in front and back orientation. Adjust the front and rear jacks until the bubble is level. Adjust bubble level for Right and right orientation. Adjust the Right and right jacks until the bubble is level. Press SET to set the level position. Attempt to Auto Level again.
Short Circuit Detected In Jack Light Output	Check the jack lights harnesses and connections on the jacks and on the controllers.
Driver's Side Rear Jack Cannot Extend Further	Return the RV to hitch-height. Position tow-vehicle to re-hitch. Lower RV onto hitch, and then, retract all jacks. Re-position RV in a location that appears more level and attempt to level your RV again.
Passenger's Side Rear Jack Cannot Extend Further	Return the RV to hitch-height. Position tow-vehicle to re-hitch. Lower RV onto hitch, and then, retract all jacks. Re-position RV in a location that appears more level and attempt to level your RV again.
Pump Power Breaker Tripped	Locate the inline fuse. Replace fuse with correct rating. If fuse cannot be located, contact the OEM for assistance in location of breaker.
Auto Level Failure	Return the RV to hitch-height. Position tow-vehicle to re-hitch. Lower RV onto hitch, and then, retract all jacks. Re-position RV in a location that appears more level and attempt to level your RV again.
Auto Retract Timeout	Check fluid level in hydraulic reservoir. Make sure batteries are fully charged. Check inline breaker between pump and batteries.
Auto Hitch Timeout	Check fluid level in hydraulic reservoir. Make sure batteries are fully charged. Check inline breaker between pump and batteries. Test again after next successful auto level. Adjust jacks manually to hitch RV if problem persists.
Ground Jacks Timeout	Return the RV to hitch-height. Position tow-vehicle to re-hitch. Lower RV onto hitch, and then, retract all jacks. Re-position RV in a location that appears more level and attempt to level your RV again. If error persists, take in for service.
Excess Angle Detected	The automatic operation was stopped due to the RV reaching the maximum allowed angle. If possible, adjust the jacks manually to achieve the desired result.
Action Temporarily Unavailable	Wait a moment and try the action again.

Error Message	What Should Be Done?
Touch Screen Power Failure	Remove the touchscreen bezel. Remove mounting screws. Check connector on touchscreen for damage. Check for broken, cut, crushed, or detached wires in wire harness. Reconnect cable and remount touchscreen and bezel. Locate leveling controller. Check connector on controller for damage. Reconnect cable and remount touchscreen and bezel. Attempt to use interface.
Hitch Point Not Set	Adjust the RV manually to connect to your vehicle. The hitch point is saved at the start of auto level.
Front Jacks Cannot Extend Further	Return the RV to hitch-height. Position tow-vehicle to re-hitch. Lower RV onto hitch, and then, retract all jacks. Re-position RV in a location that appears more level and attempt to level your RV again.
Action Prevented	The attempted action is not allowed due to a device lockout being active. Disconnect from your tow vehicle and try again.
Leveler Not Found	The leveling controller is not detected. Check the controller for disconnected cables.

Set Point Calibration

The trailer is delivered with a pre-programmed factory set point. If needed, the set point can be changed by entering SET POINT CALIBRATION MODE as described in the Entering a Custom Set point section of this document and selecting the FACTORY SET POINT to adjust. This will be the level position the trailer will automatically adjust to when the large START AUTO LEVEL button on the CAMPING SCREEN is pressed. It is also the level position the trailer will reference in the OPTIONS menu CURRENT LEVEL display.

Manual Override

The Lippert Titan Leveling System can be manually operated with an electric drill. In the event of electrical or system failure, this manual override method of extending and retracting the jacks can be used.

NOTE: Turn off the battery disconnect to shut off power to the hydraulic power unit motor prior to attempting the manual override procedure.

1. Locate the valves at the power unit (Fig. 21) that are paired with the landing gear or leveling jacks to be manually overridden.
2. Using a 5/32" hex wrench, open the valve by turning the manual override set screw clockwise (Fig. 22).
3. Remove protective label (Fig. 23) from power unit motor revealing manual override coupler (Fig. 24).
4. Using an electric drill with a 1/4" hex bit, insert the hex bit into the manual override coupler (Fig. 24) to manually operate the system.
   A. Run the drill forward (clockwise) (Fig. 24) to retract the landing gear or leveling jacks.
   B. Run the drill in reverse (counterclockwise) (Fig. 24) to extend the landing gear or leveling jacks.
5. Make sure to turn the manual override set screw on the valve back to the counterclockwise position after extending or retracting the landing gear or leveling jacks (Fig. 25).

Fig. 21

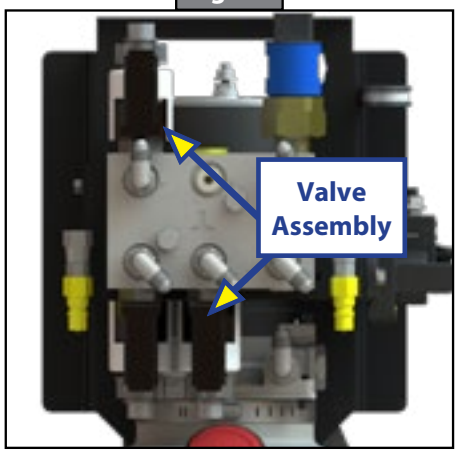


Fig. 22

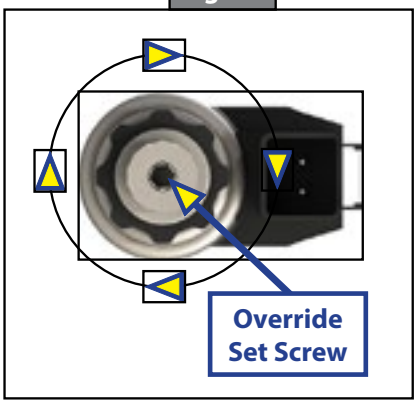
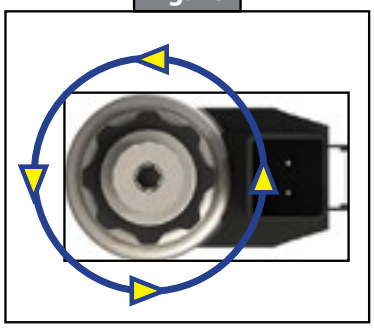


Fig. 23

Fig. 24

Fig. 25



Maintenance

1. Remove dirt and road debris from leveling jacks and landing gear as needed.
2. If jacks are down for extended periods, it is recommended to spray exposed jack tubes with a spray lubricant every three months for protection. If the 5th Wheel is located in a salty air environment, it is recommended to spray the jack tubes every 4 - 6 weeks.
3. Each month, check that the fluid level is within ¼" of the fill spout lip while leveling jacks and slide-outs are fully retracted.

NOTE: Always fill the reservoir with the leveling jacks and slide-outs fully retracted. Filling the reservoir when leveling jacks and slide-outs are extended will cause the reservoir to overflow into its compartment when the leveling jacks and slide-outs are retracted.

4. Inspect and clean all of the 5th Wheel's power and electrical connections prior to the first use of the 5th Wheel at the start of the traveling season and prior to storing the 5th Wheel. If corrosion is evident, clean all corrosion with a wire brush, then apply dielectric grease to the connections.
5. Make sure to turn the manual override set screw on the valve back to the counterclockwise position after extending or retracting the landing gear or leveling jacks.

Fluid Recommendation

Automatic transmission fluid (ATF) with Dexron®III or Mercon® V or a blend of both is recommended by Lippert Components, Inc. For a list of approved fluid specifications, see TI-188. To obtain this Technical Information sheet on-line, go to http https://lci-support-lci4a3lcd. Then click on the Technical Information sheets tab. Look for *TI-188: Hydraulic Operation Fluid Recommendation* within the listing.

NOTE: In colder temperatures (less than 10 ° F) the jacks may extend and retract slowly due to the fluid's molecular nature. For cold weather operation, fluid specially formulated for low temperatures may be desirable.

Preventive Maintenance

1. Check hydraulic fluid in reservoir every 12 months. If fluid is a clear, red color, do not change. If fluid is milky, pink and murky, and not clear red in color, drain reservoir and add new fluid. Hydraulic fluid in reservoir should be changed a minimum of every five years.

NOTE: Check the fluid only when all the jacks are fully retracted.

NOTE: When checking the hydraulic fluid level, fill to within ¼" to ½" of fill spout.

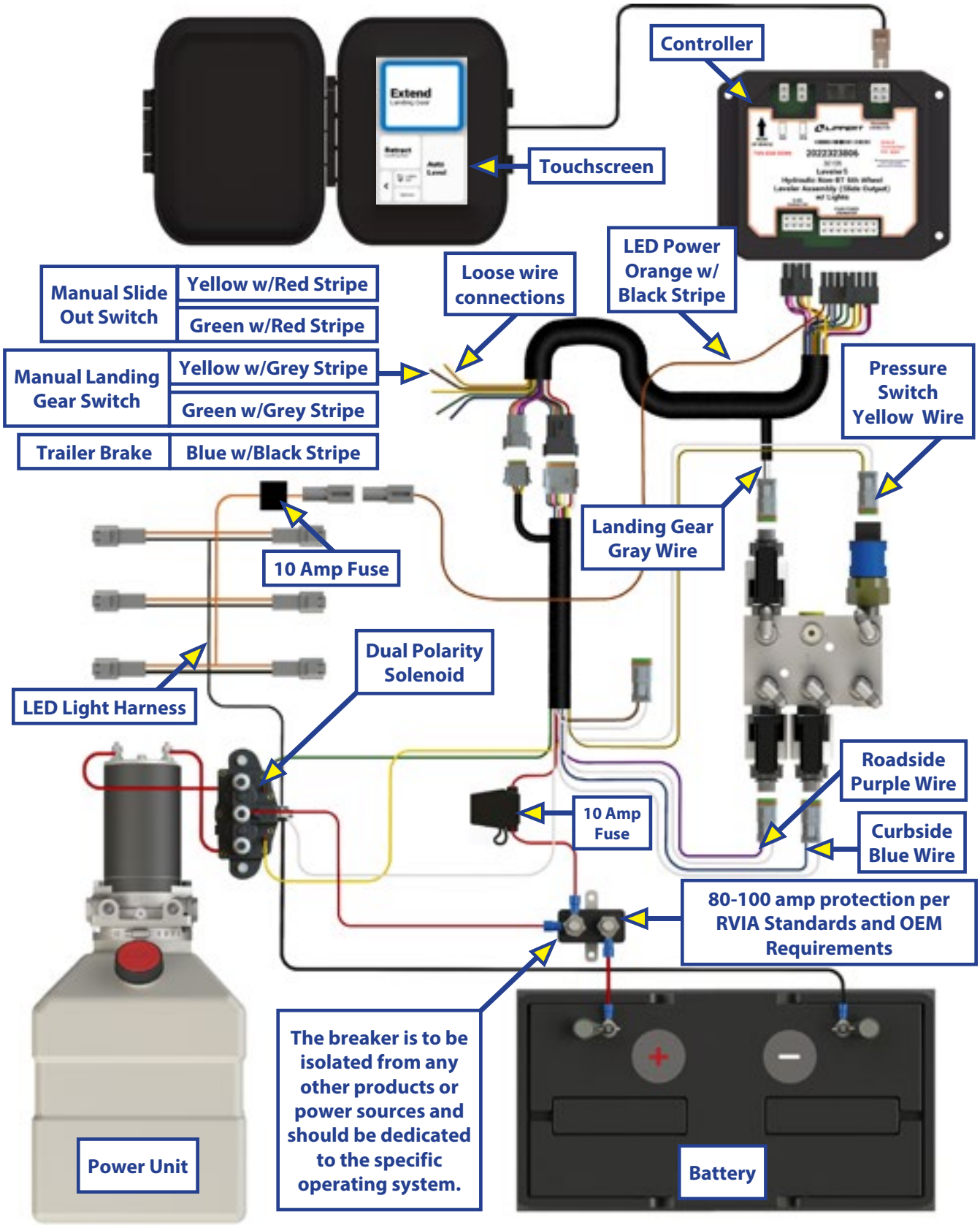
2. Inspect and clean all power unit electrical connections every 12 months. If corrosion is evident, use a small amount of lubricant to remove corrosion. Contacts must be cleaned with a non-residue cleaner prior to use. Lippert recommends the use of an electrical contact cleaner spray.
3. Remove dirt and road debris from jacks as needed.

⚠WARNING

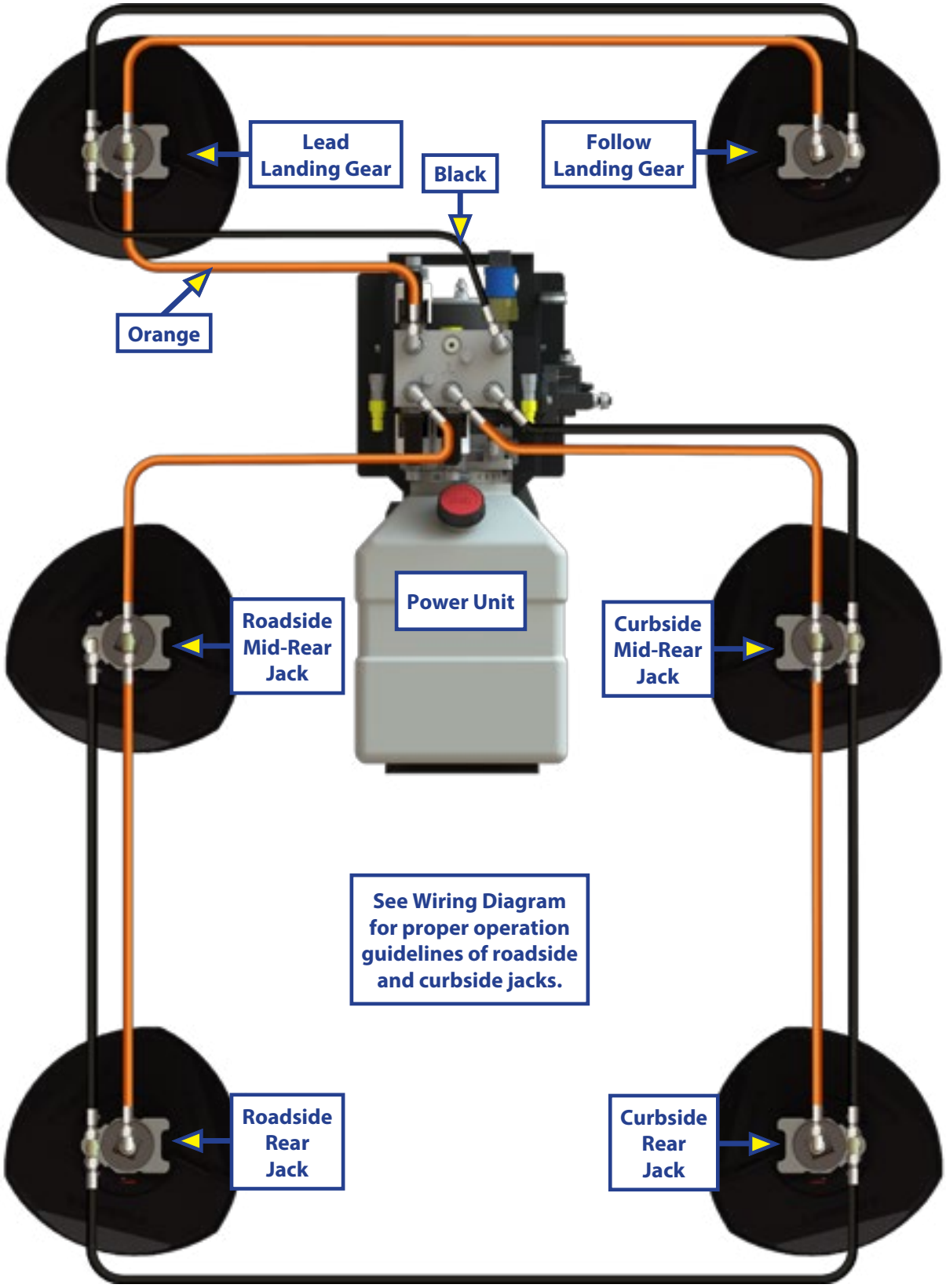
The coach should be supported at both front and rear axles with jack stands before working underneath. Failure to do so may result in death, serious personal injury or severe product or property damage.

4. If jacks are down for extended periods, it is recommended to spray exposed jack rods with a dry silicone lubricant every three months for protection. If the trailer is located in a salty environment, it is recommended to spray the rods every four to six weeks.

Wiring Diagram



Plumbing Diagram



This page is intentionally blank.

Lippert Ground Control 3.0 System
Electric Leveling (Equipped on G-Class)

LIPPERT

Ground Control 3.0 Leveling Operation

DROPPING OFF TRAILER

1. Park trailer on level ground.
2. Chock all tires.
3. Make sure battery power is on.
4. Press "**ON/OFF**" button **(G)** to turn panel on.
5. Extend the inner legs of both landing gear to within 4-5" of the ground by pulling quick release pins.
   NOTE: Before proceeding, ensure that the quick release pin is fully re-engaged once the drop legs are set in place.
6. Push **"Front"** button **(F)** and lower landing gear until the weight of the trailer is taken off of the 5th wheel plate.
   NOTE: At this point, red arrow lights may appear next to the jack buttons indicating the current disposition of the trailer.
7. Disconnect 5th wheel latch.
8. Push **"FRONT"** button **(F)** to extend front landing gear jacks manually and lift front of vehicle to clear 5th wheel plate.
9. Pull tow vehicle away and park at a safe distance.
10. Push **"AUTO LEVEL"** button **(C)**. The unit will commence auto-level feature by setting front landing gear jacks to level, then dropping rear jacks, followed by a leveling sequence check.
    NOTE: If this unit is equipped with a 6-point system, the two middle jacks will be grounded to stabilize the unit. These two jacks do not level the unit.
    NOTE: When auto-level sequence is complete, LCD screen will indicate, **"LEVEL SUCCESSFUL." "READY"** will then appear, along with a green light in the middle of the jack buttons.
11. Press the "**ON/OFF**" **(G)** button to turn panel off.

RECONNECTING TO TOW VEHICLE

1. Press "**ON/OFF**" button **(G)** to turn panel on.
2. Push "**LEFT" and "RIGHT**" buttons **(D & E)** together. Rear jacks retract. Then front jacks will return to previous drop-off height.
3. Back tow vehicle to align 5th wheel hitch.
4. Push the **"Down"** arrow button **(A)** until "**AUTO RETRACT ALL**" is displayed and push the "**ENTER**" button **(B)**.
5. After auto-retract sequence is complete, raise and secure front jack legs with quick release pull pins.
6. Press the "**ON/OFF**" button **(G)** to turn panel off.

Ph: 432-LIPPERT (432-547-7378) | Web: lippert.com | Email: customerservice@lci1.com | CCD-0007693 | Rev 07.11.23

Lippert Ground Control 3.0 System, Continued (Equipped on G-Class)

⚠WARNING

Failure to act in accordance with the following may result in death or serious personal injury. The use of the Ground Control® 3.0 leveling system to support the trailer for any reason other than which it is intended is prohibited by Lippert's limited warranty.

The Lippert leveling system is designed as a leveling system only and should NOT be used to provide service for any reason under the trailer such as changing tires or servicing the leveling system.

Any attempts to change tires or perform other service while trailer is supported by the Ground Control® 3.0 leveling system could result in death, serious injury or damage to the 5th wheel.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT exceed GVWR or severe damage to product or property may occur.

⚠CAUTION

Moving parts can **Pinch**, **Crush** or **Cut**. Keep clear and use caution.

Prior to operation

1. The trailer is parked on a reasonably level surface.
2. Make sure that all persons, pets, and property stay clear of the trailer while the leveling system is in operation.
3. Make sure battery(ies) are fully charged and test at least 12 VDC under load.

Ground Control 3.0 Touchpad

Fig. 1

Callout	Description
A	Up Arrow - Scrolls up through the menu on LCD.
B	Down Arrow - Scrolls down through the menu on LCD.
C	Enter - Activates modes and procedures indicated on LCD.
D	Retract - Places leveling system into retract mode. - Press and hold down for 1 second to initiate Auto Retract.
E	LCD Display - Displays procedures and results
F	Auto Level - Places leveling system into auto level mode.
G	Front Jack Button - Activates front jacks in manual mode.
H	Left Jack Button - Activates left jacks in manual mode.
I	Right Jack Button - Activates right jacks in manual mode.
J	Rear Jack Button - Activates rear jacks in manual mode.
K	Power Button - Turns leveling system on and off.

Basic jack operation

Landing gear (*or front jacks*) can be operated any time the system is *ON*. By pushing the *FRONT* button (Fig. 1G), both front jacks can be extended. By pushing either the *FRONT* and *LEFT* (Fig. 1H) or *FRONT* and *RIGHT* (Fig.1I) buttons, the individual front jacks can be extended. If the touch pad is put in the *retract* mode, indicated by the orange illuminated LED next to the *RETRACT* button (Fig. 1D), the front jacks can be retracted together by pushing the *FRONT* button (Fig. 1G) or individually by pressing *LEFT* (Fig. 1H) or *RIGHT* (Fig. 1I) buttons, while simultaneously pressing the *FRONT* button (Fig. 1G).

Middle jacks (if so equipped) can not be extended or retracted in standard mode or manual mode. Middle jacks can only be operated in the special jack code error mode. In order to operate the middle jacks press *LEFT* (Fig. 1H) and *RIGHT* (FIG. 1I) buttons simultaneously.

The rear jacks can only be extended when the touch pad is in the manual mode. Once system is in manual mode, pressing the *REAR* button (Fig. 1J) will extend both rear jacks at the same time. To extend individual rear jacks, press the *LEFT* (Fig. 1H) or *RIGHT* (Fig. 1I) buttons while simultaneously pressing the *REAR* button (Fig. 1J), depending on which jack needs to be operated.

If the touch pad is put in the retract mode, indicated by the orange illuminated LED next to the *RETRACT* button (Fig. 1D), the rear jacks can be retracted together by pushing the *REAR* button (Fig. 1J) or individually by pressing either the *LEFT* (Fig. 1H) or *RIGHT* (Fig. 1I) buttons, while simultaneously pressing the *REAR* button (Fig. 1J).

NOTE: If the rear jacks will not operate individually using the method described above, but they do operate properly when Auto Level is performed, the *Twist Prevention Protection System* has locked out the operation to prevent damage to the frame of the trailer.

Ground Control 3.0
Landing Gear/Front Jack

⚠WARNING

Be sure to park the trailer on solid, level ground.

Clear all jack landing locations of debris and obstructions. Locations should also be free of depressions.

When parking the trailer on extremely soft surfaces, utilize load distribution pads under each jack. People and pets should be clear of the trailer while operating leveling system.

Never lift the trailer completely off the ground. Lifting the trailer so the wheels are not touching the ground will create an unstable and unsafe condition.

Lippert Ground Control 3.0 System, Continued (Equipped on G-Class)

Unhitching from a Tow Vehicle (G-Class)

NOTE: Prior to unhitching from the tow vehicle, check that your trailer is parked on a level surface, *then* chock the tires of the trailer.

1. Disconnect the *7-Way Plug* and the *Breakaway Switch Lanyard* (*cable*).
2. Extend the inner legs of both landing gear (front jacks) to show no more than 6 pin holes by pulling on the quick-release pins. Make sure pin is FULLY re-engaged.
3. Push *ON/OFF* (Fig. 1K). The LCD Screen will light up and display “READY Jacks: Up” (Fig. 2A).
4. Push the *UP* arrow (Fig. 1A) to scroll to “Drop Front Jacks” option on LCD screen.
5. Red indicator lights (Fig. 2B) may come on, indicating the current disposition of the trailer. In this case, the front and right sides of the trailer are low.
6. Push *ENTER* button (Fig. 1C). Both front jacks will go to the ground and stop.
7. Push the *FRONT* button (Fig. 1G) extending the front jacks to a sufficient height, which raises the front of the trailer off of the tow vehicle’s 5th wheel hitch plate. Be sure to pull the hitch release lever.
8. Pull tow vehicle away and park at a safe distance.

Fig. 2

Fig. 3

Auto Level

- After unhitching from tow vehicle and parking the vehicle at a safe distance away from the trailer, press the *ON/OFF* button and then press *AUTO LEVEL* (Fig. 1F).

NOTE: Once the automatic leveling cycle has been started, it is important that there is no movement in the trailer until the trailer has completed the leveling process. Failure to remain still during the leveling cycle could have an effect on the performance of the leveling system.

NOTE: In order for hitch recognition feature to function, the auto level sequence MUST be started with the front of the trailer above level.

Auto Level Sequence

1. When Auto Level Sequence begins, the front of the trailer will lower slightly to a point below level.
2. Rear jacks will be grounded.
3. A side to side leveling sequence occurs.

NOTE: At this point on the 6 point system (if equipped), the two (2) middle jacks are grounded to stabilize the trailer. These two (2) jacks DO NOT level the trailer.

4. Each jack will perform a final grounding touch.
5. LCD will read “AUTO LEVEL SUCCESS” (Fig. 3).
6. LCD will then read “READY Jacks: Down” (Fig. 4A), and the green LED at the center of the jack buttons will be illuminated (Fig. 4B).

Fig. 4

Fig. 5

Lippert Ground Control 3.0 System, Continued (Equipped on G-Class)

Note: If the *AUTO LEVEL* sequence does not perform as described, place the system in manual mode and test that the jacks operate correctly by pushing their coordinating buttons on the touch pad; ie. the *FRONT* button operates only the front jacks, etc.

Hitch Recognition

1. Turn on the touch pad.
2. Push the *UP* arrow (Fig. 5A) to scroll to *Auto Reconnect* option on LCD screen.
3. Push *ENTER* (Fig. 5B). The rear jacks and middle jacks (if equipped) will retract first, then the front jacks will extend to raise the trailer to the height where the auto level sequence was started.

NOTE: If the auto level sequence was started with the front of the trailer in a below-level condition, the Hitch Recognition will not function and the LCD will display *Feature Disabled.*

- In order for the Hitch Recognition feature to function, the auto level sequence MUST be started with the front of the trailer above level.

Once the RV is stabilized, continue setting up the RV. Connect to the site facilities, extend the slideouts & awning, etc. There is no particular order to these set up procedures. With practice you will find the order that is the most efficient for your needs.

WARNING

Ensure the trailer is supported at both the front and rear with jack stands before performing any troubleshooting or service to the trailer.

Failure to do so may result in death or personal injury.

Preventive Maintenance

1. For optimum performance, the system requires full battery current and voltage. The battery MUST be maintained at full capacity.
2. Check the terminals and other connections at the battery, the controller, and the jacks for corrosion and loose or damaged connections.
3. Remove dirt and road debris from jacks as needed.
4. Leveling legs that stay in the extended position for long periods require protection from the elements.

- Spray the exposed landing gear rod with a silicone lubricant every every three (3) months.
- If your RV is located in a salty environment, spray the rods with a silicone lubricant every four to six (4-6) weeks.

Electrical Systems

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel is equipped with two independent electrical systems. One system is 120-volt 60hz AC power, the other system is 12-volt DC power. The electrical equipment and associated circuitry are engineered into a dedicated system specific to your RV. All installations meet or exceed industry standards applicable on the date of manufacture.

- ***A hazardous condition may result* from changes or additions to RV electrical system made after delivery.**
- **Adding fixed appliances or making unauthorized changes is NOT recommended.**
- **ONLY a *qualified electrical technician* should perform service or modifications on the RV electrical system.**

*The **methods, components**, and **materials** used MUST be in compliance with current safety and code requirements. Please consult your dealer's service department for assistance.*

Electrical System Maintenance

- ALWAYS disconnect the negative 12-volt DC battery terminal and the shore power cord BEFORE working on the electrical system.
- ALWAYS turn OFF the power converter, BEFORE disconnecting the battery.

For more information on your RV's electrical system, See the component manuals in your Owner Information Package.

50-Amp Power Cord

The power cord (or *Shore Power Cord*) connects your RV to an external power receptacle. This heavy duty cord has a dual purpose. ***When connected, it will:***

- *CARRY VOLTAGE* & CURRENT to your RV from the external power receptacle, *and*
- *GROUND* the electrical system of your RV through the external power receptacle.

BEFORE connecting your power cord, ALWAYS:

- TEST the external power receptacle or electrical box with a ***Line Monitor/Outlet Tester*** (customer supplied).
- **DO NOT connect the power cord if the *Line Monitor* indicates REVERSE POLARITY or an OPEN GROUND.**

⚠WARNING

Use caution when using metal tools. If a tool makes contact with a battery terminal or the metal connected to it, a short circuit could occur which could cause personal injury, explosion or fire.

⚠WARNING

The power cord MUST be fully extended when in use and NOT left coiled in the electrical compartment or on the ground.

If the power cord is left coiled, it may potentially create enough heat to melt its protective casing.

50 Amp Power Inlet

50-Amp Power Cord, Continued

WARNING

- DO NOT hook up the power cord to any receptacle until you have verified proper polarity and grounding. Polarity indicators can be purchased in most electrical and hardware stores.
- DO NOT use any cheater plug, adapter or extension cord to reconfigure incoming AC power or break the continuity of the circuit connected to the grounding pin.
- DO NOT connect the power cord into an outlet that is not grounded, or adapt the power cord plug to connect it to a receptacle for which it is not designed.
- DO NOT remove the grounding pin to connect to a non-grounded receptacle. Removal of the ground pin disables an important safety feature designed to prevent electrocution and shock hazards.
- DO NOT connect the power cord to an extension cord. Use of an improper extension cord will cause overheating of the cord as well as potentially causing premature failure of the AC equipment.
- It is the *responsibility* of the electrical receptacle owner to ensure that it is properly wired and grounded.
- *Reverse Polarity* and/ or *Improper Grounding* of your RV can cause personal injury or death.

Connecting the power cord

1. Turn OFF the load center main 120-volt circuit breaker.
2. Carefully extend the entire length of the power cord from the electric cable hatch to the external power source.
3. Plug the power cord into the receptacle. Make sure that all of the power cord prongs are properly seated into the receptacle.
4. Return to your RV and turn ON the load center main circuit breaker.
5. To help prevent power surges from damaging the connected loads, please follow these instructions when hooking up to the external power source:
   a. Unplug the shore power cord when the RV is left unattended. This may help limit potential damage in the event of a power surge.
   b. Use care to prevent damaging the connection pins when connecting or disconnecting the power cord.
   c. Reverse the *Connecting the power cord* steps (1-5) listed above, when you are ready to leave.
6. ALWAYS disconnect the power cord from the outlet by the plug; NEVER disconnect the plug by pulling the cord.

Power cord maintenance

- INSPECT your power cord *frequently* for Cuts, Cracks, and Worn Insulation.
- REPLACE the cord immediately if any of these conditions are found.

120-Volt AC System

Your Momentum FW is equipped with a ***50 amp*** electrical system.

- The ***50 amp*** 120 volt 60hz AC electrical system is designed to operate on two (2) legs of 120-volt power at a maximum current flow of 50 amperes per leg.

Power to your 50 amp, 120-volt 60hz AC electrical system can be supplied by the 120-volt 60hz utilities found at RV campgrounds or by a generator. A campground's electrical service may occasionally experience high or low voltage.

- **Exposure to voltages higher or lower than 120-volts will damage or shorten the service life of the electrical system and appliances.**

The following electrical components (if so equipped) will operate ONLY when your RV is connected to shore power: 120-volt to 12-volt power converter, air conditioner, 120-volt refrigerator, microwave oven, television(s), fireplace, and other appliances that plug into convenience electrical receptacles.

For recommendations on power-surge protection, Consult your dealer.

WARNING

*For **50 amp** systems only:*

Make certain the external power source that you connect the power cord to is a **50 amp NEMA 14-50 RV receptacle,** and NOT a 240 volt AC receptacle.

120-Volt Circuit Breakers

The 120-volt AC circuit breakers are located in the main load center. They protect all of the 120-volt wiring and components. Each circuit is identified on a label inside the load center.

- An *overload or short circuit* will cause the breaker to *trip,* stopping the flow of electricity for the affected circuit.
- If a circuit breaker *trips*, turn OFF the appliance on that circuit. Allow some time for the circuit breaker to cool.
- **To RESET the circuit breaker**, flip the switch to the OFF position, then flip it back to the ON position.
- If a breaker immediately trips again or trips frequently, contact your dealer to diagnose and repair the problem.

WARNING

Replacement circuit breakers must be of the same voltage, amperage rating and type. Never use a higher rated replacement circuit breaker; doing so may cause a fire by overheating the RV wiring.

Maintenance and replacement

Circuit breaker switches can wear out. Test the breakers annually, at the beginning of the camping season. Replace them as needed, during normal maintenance.

- **To TEST**: Flip each breaker switch to the OFF position, then back to the ON position.

For further information, Contact your dealer.

CAUTION

Circuit breakers and fuses will not offer complete protection of the electrical system in the event of a voltage spike/power surge

Converter

The Power Converter changes 120-volt AC power to usable 12-volt DC power when the shore power cord is connected to an external power source. A thermal breaker is built-in to the converter to protect it from overheating.

Overheating is usually caused by the converter operating above its maximum power output for an extended time period, or with too little air flow.

- To reduce converter heat, DO NOT run any unnecessary 12-volt lights/motors/appliances, *and*
- Keep the converter cooling fins and fan clear of obstructions.

Inspection and maintenance

If the 12-volt power converter is NOT working, or the auxiliary battery is not being charged:

1. Locate the converter fuse panel on one end of the converter.
2. Check the reverse polarity fuse or fuses.

The manufacturer's warranty will be void if the case has been removed. There are no customer serviceable parts inside.

For further information, Contact your dealer.

GFCI Receptacle

Grounding is your personal protection from electrical shock. Each RV has a ground fault current interrupter (GFCI) engineered into the electrical system. This device has been designed to reduce the possible injury caused by electric shock. The GFCI will not protect against short circuits or circuit overloads.

- A *tripped* GFCI receptacle indicates that abnormally high 120-volt current flow (a ground fault) was detected through the electrical system grounding circuit.

A fault condition can be caused by faulty wire insulation, wet wiring inside an appliance, or faulty electrical equipment connected to the circuit, etc. All ground faults must be repaired before use of the RV.

Test all GFCI receptacles monthly

- **Push in** the *TEST* button. This should **pop out** the *RESET* button, indicating the GFCI receptacle has been *tripped*. This will interrupt 120-volt power.
- **Push in** the *RESET* button. This should restore 120-volt power.

Contact your dealer for assistance, if the RESET button does NOT restore 120-volt power or trips repeatedly.

Replacing Light Bulbs (Customer Supplied)

- BEFORE replacing a bulb, turn OFF the light switch.
- **Using the wrong bulb can overload the lamp circuit and overheat the fixture, creating a FIRE HAZARD.**
  - CHECK that your replacement bulbs match the type, wattage and voltage listed on the lamp fixture.

12-Volt DC System

Many of your RV components including the light fixtures, water pump, motors and appliances run on 12-volt electricity.

- The **Converter** supplies 12-volt power when your RV is connected to external power. The converter will also charge the Auxiliary Battery in most situations.
- The **Auxiliary Battery** supplies 12-volt power when your RV is NOT connected to external power.
- The **Tow Vehicle Alternator** supplies 12-volt power when the *7-Way Wire Harness* is connected, and the tow vehicle engine is running.

  The alternator runs the components needed for travel including, the brake lights, turn signals, brakes, running lights and the breakaway switch. In addition, the *7-Way Wire Harness* provides a common ground and a charge line to your auxiliary battery.

12-Volt DC Outlet (If So Equipped)

Your RV may include a 12-volt DC outlet (not applicable on all models). ONLY use this outlet for an appliance that runs on 12-volt DC power and consumes less than 60 watts (5 amps).

- **To prevent a short circuit, keep the 12-volt DC outlet free of any (metallic) foreign material.**

⚠WARNING

Replacement fuses must be of the same voltage, amperage rating and type. Never use a higher rated replacement fuse; doing so may cause a fire by overheating the RV wiring.

12-Volt Fuse Panel & In-line Fuses

The label inside the 12-volt fuse panel indicates the fuse sizes, positions and components powered. The fuse panel label should be kept permanently affixed to your RV.

In addition, your Momentum may include the following *In-line Fuses* found in the front storage compartment:

- 10 Amp - Hydraulic Leveling System
- 30 Amp - Solar Prep
- 300 Amp - Solar Package

ALSO - 30 Amp behind the distribution panel for the Rockford Fosgate speaker

G-Class only - 2 Amp behind monitor panel for awning light

- INSPECT all 12-volt fuses at the beginning of each camping season, and REPLACE as needed.
- The fuses may not offer complete protection of the RV electrical system in the event of a power surge or spike.

Replacing a fuse

BEFORE replacing a fuse, ALWAYS turn *OFF* or *UNPLUG* the component(s) that it protects.

1. DISCONNECT the shore power cord.
2. DISCONNECT the negative cable from the RV auxiliary battery.
3. REMOVE the fuse panel cover to check fuses.
4. PULL the fuse straight out of the fuse block.
   - *If the fuse is not blown, please contact your dealer to determine the cause of the problem.*
5. ALWAYS replace with a new fuse of the same specified voltage, amperage rating and type in the original location.
   - *NEVER use a higher rated replacement fuse.*

Auxiliary Battery

The 12-volt DC electrical system is designed for use with a **Group 24** or **Group 27 deep cycle battery**.

- **Your RV has many individual 12-volt DC loads. *When combined, the total load is higher than the converter can produce*.**
- High demands for 12-volt power can be met by an *auxiliary battery* for limited periods of time.

Dry camping

When dry camping, it is recommended you consider the charge condition of the auxiliary battery AND plan your electrical usage accordingly.

- If the RV is drawing power solely from the auxiliary battery ***without recharging***, it will become ***depleted***.
- As the battery's charge becomes ***lower***, it will also ***discharge at a faster rate***.

For accuracy, test the auxiliary battery voltage using a volt-ohm meter. A fully charged auxiliary battery will read 12.7 volts DC and 1.265 specific gravity at 80°F (32°C).

The auxiliary battery is considered discharged at 11.8 volts, and dead at 11.65 volts. Permanent damage may occur when voltage drops below those levels. Typically, a deep cycle battery has an amp-hour rating of 75-100 amps.

If the furnace and refrigerator are operating simultaneously, approximately (12.0 + 3.0) 15.0 amps per hour are used. This does not include any 12-volt lights, water pump or any other 12-volt component.

In the above example, if the furnace and refrigerator operated constantly, a 75 amp-hour battery would become fully discharged in 5 hours (75ah /15a = 5h).

The RV's auxiliary battery should be installed in parallel with the battery in your tow vehicle. When the 7-way trailer plug is connected, *both* batteries power the RV.

- **It is very important NOT to discharge your tow vehicle battery below the level required to start the engine.**

To prevent this from occurring, disconnect the 7-way trailer plug or install a *Battery Isolator* (customer supplied). When the tow vehicle engine is operating with the RV connected, the tow vehicle charging system will charge both batteries.

Replacement and maintenance

Some equipment in your RV will draw small amounts of current even when turned OFF. To prevent the auxiliary battery from being discharged when your RV is not connected to shore line power, disconnect the auxiliary battery negative cable at the battery. During storage, it is important to check the voltage monthly and recharge the auxiliary battery as needed. If you remove the auxiliary battery from your RV, store it in a dry, cool area per the manufacturer's instructions.

When it is time to replace the auxiliary battery, replace it with a **Group 24 or Group 27 deep cycle battery ONLY**.

- ***DO NOT reverse the positive and negative battery cables (doing so will blow the reverse polarity fuse(s) that protect the converter).***

Contact the battery manufacturer for further information.

7-Way Battery Power Control Box (If So Equipped)

Battery Disconnect Switch

The *7-Way Battery Power Control Box* provides a central location to control the power connections for your 12V needs, your vehicle-to-trailer power, and your lighting connections. This product features the use of Spring Lever and Screw Compression Lug connections eliminating the need for adding terminal ends to wires along with proper circuit protection for the needs of Battery, Solar, Inverter and Auxiliary 12V inputs and outputs.

Other special features include the ability to have connections on the battery disconnect or battery direct, an option for a safety warning for the breakaway switch, and finally the ability for water-tight connections to assure long term quality and function.

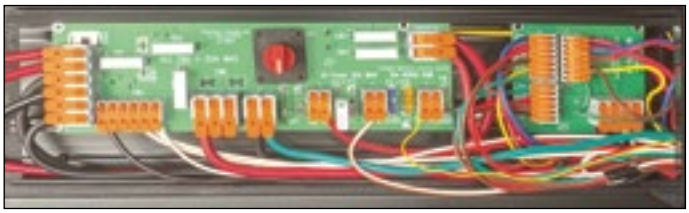
At times when *auxiliary power* will NOT be needed:

- TURN the *Battery Power Control Box Switch* to the OFF position
- All 12-Volt safety items will remain operational.

When you are ready to use your RV's interior features:

TURN the *Battery Power Control Box Switch* to the ON position.

If the RV will be in STORAGE: Also DISCONNECT the battery cables from the auxiliary battery terminals. *See **page 217**, Winterizing / RV Storage Preparation #12.*



7-Way Battery Power Control Box - pictured closed and open

Calculating Electrical Load

While connected to external power and using appliances, remember that the 120-volt electrical system can run a *maximum* of 100 amps. If you overload the RV and/or campground electrical system, a circuit breaker *trip* may occur.

Added together, the amperage of each appliance and copo-nent running at the same time, *must NOT exceed* 100 amps.

To calculate the amperage rating for each individual appliance, divide the *wattage* by the *voltage* (both should be listed on the appliance). ***For example***:

1200 watts *divided by* **120 volts** *equals* **10 amps**.
*See the **Next Page**, Approximate Electrical Load Ratings.*

Approximate Electrical Load Ratings

Use the actual amperage of the appliance when possible. (Watts ÷ Volts)

120 Volt System	
Air Conditioner	14-18 amps
Coffee Maker	6-12 amps
Converter (Each)	8-11 amps
Curling Iron or Hair Dryer	10-14 amps
DVD / Blu-ray System	3 amps
Microwave	12 amps
Refrigerator	6 amps
Satellite Receiver	2 amps
TV	2-4 amps
Vacuum Cleaner	8 amps
Washer / Dryer	12 amps
Water Heater	12 amps

12 Volt System	
Aisle Lights	0.5 amps
Baggage Compartment Lights	0.5 amps
Decorative Wall Lights	0.5 amps
Dinette Light	0.5-1 amps
Exterior Entertainment Center	1-3 amps
Fantastic Fan	1.5 amps
3” LED Puck Lights (Each)	0.22 amps
Furnace	8-10 amps
Generator Start	95 amps *
Illuminated Switch	.125 amps
Inverter	*Variable*
Leveling System	95 amps *
LP Detector	.125 amps
Map Light	1.5 amps
Porch Light	1.5 amps
Power Awning	10 amps
Power Vent	5 amps
Refrigerator	3 amps
Shower Light	0.22 amps
Step Cover	10 amps
TV Plate / Antenna Booster	1.0 amps
Vanity Light	0.22 amps
Water Heater	6 amps
Water Pump	7 amps
	** Momentary load*

Inverter - 2000 Watts

Front wall of the door-side, fwd. pass-thru storage compartment

*Scan the **QR Code**, above, with your tablet or smartphone for the WF-5220 Inverter OEM Owner's Manual.*

⚠WARNING

Turning the unit OFF does NOT disconnect the batteries or the AC Power Source.

Therefore the "AC output load" is still active.

Only use the remote control cable supplied, using different cables could cause permanent damage to the inverter unit.

Operating the inverter without a proper ground connection may cause electrical safety hazard.

Inverter - 2,000 Watts (If So Equipped)

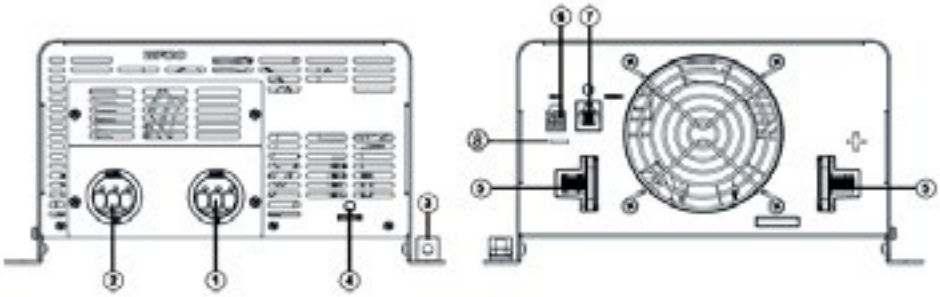
Your Momentum Fifth Wheel, if so equipped, has a 2,000 Watt inverter mounted on the ceiling of the front compartment, *See* **photos, A & B**, *left*.

BEFORE using the inverter please download and read the entire manufacturer's owner's manual for detailed operating instructions and safety warnings. The **WF-5220** manual can be found on the WFCO website or SCAN the ***QR Code***, left.

When properly connected to the RV battery (or batteries) and turned ON, the inverter transforms the *direct current* (DC) from the batteries into a pure sine wave *alternating current* (AC). This AC is similar to the voltage provided by your utility and is used to power any electrical appliances (i.e., AC loads) connected to the inverter's output.

Switch the *pictured* Battery Disconnect to the OFF position when the inverter is NOT needed. *See **photo A**, upper left.*

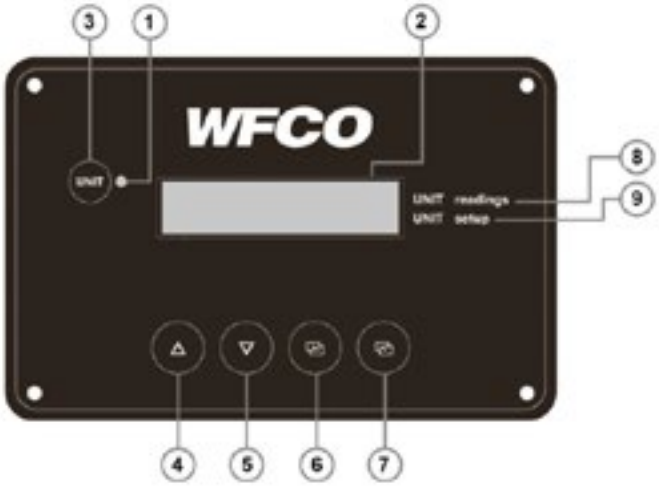
The inverter may not be able to start some appliances, particularly pumps and refrigerators even though their rated current draw is within the inverter's limits.



Front Panel		Back Panel	
1	AC Output	5	DC Input +/-
2	AC Input	6	RVC
3	Chassis Ground	7	Remote Port
4	Status LED	8	Terminal Resistor

Power ON / OFF/ Remote (Main) Switch

- The LCD remote control panel is found inside the forward door-side pass-thru storage compartment.
- The input that comes from the (AC) Breaker Panel can't be controlled by the switch. Please disconnect Shore Power before you operate the main inverter unit in order to avoid an electric shock.
- ***Remember that the 2,000 Watt inverter can ONLY run a maximum of approximately 16.4 amps.***
- *See **page 107**, Approximate Electrical Load Ratings.*



Inverter LCD Panel is located on the Front wall of the door-side, fwd. pass-thru storage compartment

1	**LED indicators -** There is an LED indicator on the front panel that lights solid to indicate the inverter is ON/OFF
2	**LED Display -** The display is used for setting up the system operation, as well as viewing current operating status and fault conditions
3	**Unit ON/OFF Button -** To Turn ON, PRESS for 0.5 seconds, To Turn OFF, PRESS for 3 seconds.
4	**UP Button -** Moves up in the menu tree.
5	**Down Button -** Moves down in the menu tree.
6	**Enter Button -** Go to the next page.
7	**Back Button -** Go to the previous page.
8	**Unit Readings -** LCD screen displays • **Temperature** • **DC Voltage** • **Grid Input** • **Inverter Out** • **Fault Condition**
9	**Unit Setup -** Sets inverter parameters

For battery recommendations and any further questions, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service

Solar Docking Port

The *Solar Docking Port* is standard equipment, installed on the roof of your RV. It is designed for use with either an OEM or customer supplied *Solar Power Charging System*.

Solar Power Charging System (If So Equipped)

The *Solar Power Charging System* efficiently charges your RV battery (or batteries) by converting the energy from roof mounted solar panels to 12 Volt DC. The *MPPT Solar Charge Controller* protects your battery (or batteries) from overcharging by limiting the current flow from your solar array once they are fully charged.

DOWNLOAD the ***FutureLink*** *App* to your smart phone or tablet to view your solar charging and battery status information.

- *See the **FutureLink App Set Up Bluetooth Monitoring** sheet in your Owner Information Package for instructions.*

Solar Docking Port

MPPT Solar Charge Controller

NOTICE

When the PV voltage exceeds the maximum PV open circuit voltage range, continuous operation may cause damage to the controller. Any damage caused by the user's improper operation will VOID warranty.

Please read the entire manufacturer's owner's manual for detailed operating instructions and safety warnings.

Generator Prep

Generator, if so equipped, Is Located in the Front Compartment.

Generator prep means that your RV includes the basic wiring needed to install an aftermarket generator (customer supplied). RV generators are built in compliance with specific codes and standards. **Your RV is designed to ONLY use generators built specifically for RVs**.

When you are ready to purchase an aftermarket generator, consult your dealer for purchasing and installation assistance.

Generator - NPS (If So Equipped)

BEFORE using your RV generator:

Please read and understand the full generator manufacturer's Owner's Guide found in your Owner Information Package.

- ***Follow all instructions, warnings, & safety alerts.***
- **Or to download an electronic copy, scan the *QR Code***, *left, with your tablet or smartphone.*

⚠WARNING

Maintain a proper ventilation parameter extending 914.4 mm or (3') in all directions from all manufacturer installed Generator components.

⚠WARNING

Prior to starting the Generator and upon initial arrival at chosen destination, perform an inspection of your RV's physical location as set forth in "Pre-Start Check and Inspection"

Please read and understand the Generator control instructions in your *OneControl® Touch Panel Owner's Manual* found in your *Owner Information Package.*

- *See **page 58**, ONEControl® Touch Panel*

The generator (if so equipped) will produce 120-volt AC power for use when camping in areas where shore power is unavailable. It can be controlled both at the generator itself or inside the RV on the Command Center. The power to start the generator comes from the auxiliary battery (customer supplied).

- **The generator runs on gasoline and gives off Carbon Monoxide.** *See **page 25**, Carbon Monoxide.*
- **TEST the Carbon Monoxide Detector *<u>every</u> time that* you use the RV**. *See **page 26**, Combination CO/LP Alarm.*

Your Generator can be controlled from the OneControl® Touch Panel, if so equipped.

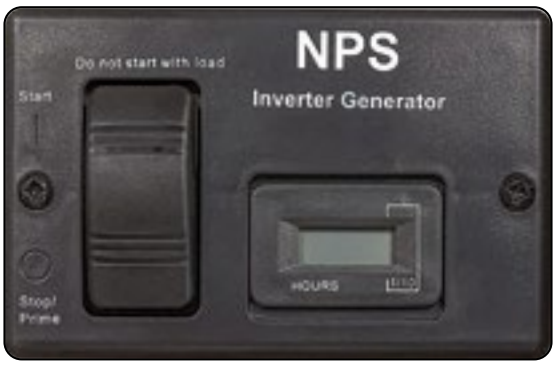


Fig. 6

The Generator Remote Panel Start/Stop Switch is found inside the RV at the Command Center.

BEFORE starting the generator *every* time:

1. ***Battery and Battery Connections***

- Verify there is sufficient battery voltage.
  - Ensure all battery connections are clean of any acid build-up and battery cable nuts are securely fastened.

2. ***Locate, Open and Secure the RV Generator Compartment Door***

3. ***Locate, Open and Remove Generator Service Access Door and set aside while performing remainder of Pre-Start Check and Inspection***

4. ***Oil Level***

- Ensure RV is on a level surface
- Remove the engine oil dipstick from engine
- Wipe off all excess oil from dipstick
- Re-insert engine oil dipstick without threading in dipstick
  - Immediately remove and verify oil on dipstick is at the FULL mark

5. ***Fuel Level and Connections***

- Verify your RV fuel gauge indicates sufficient fuel
- Verify fuel connection at Generator is secure. *See Fig. 5, right.*
- Verify Purge Line fuel vapor vent connection at the Generator is secure. *See Fig. 5, right.*
  - Verify manufacturer installed cap is secured on purge line spout.

Pre-Start Check and Inspection

6. ***Exhaust Assembly including Debris Screen***

- Verify debris screen is intact.
- Verify Support Strap is secure.
- Verify Pipe Assembly is connected.

⚠WARNING

NEVER store anything underneath or around the bottom or front of the Generator. Lack of a proper ventilation parameter may cause the Generator to overheat and/or ignite tall grass, vegetation or other objects in proximity to the running Generator. This presents a fire hazard which could ignite from hot exhaust pipe assembly, fumes and vapors and result in death or extreme bodily harm to the Owner or Operator.

⚠ CAUTION

Visually inspect all Generator mounting components (Exhaust Assembly, Service Access Door, Fuel Connections, Electrical Connections, Remote Control Panel) every ten (10) hours of operation.

⚠ CAUTION

When re-installing the Air Filter Housing, verify the cover seal is intact in its original location and the cover is latched correctly.

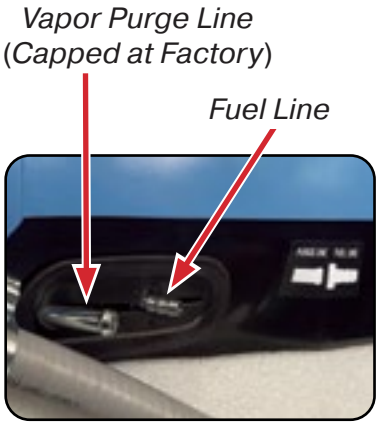


Fig. 5

Generator - NPS, Continued

Generator with Front Panel Removed to Access Main Power & Circuit Breaker.

DANGER

Engine Exhaust

Gasoline-powered engines and tools present a serious health hazard. They produce high concentrations of carbon monoxide (CO).

- CO is a poisonous gas that can cause illness, permanent neurological damage and death.
- CO is colorless, odorless, and non-irritating and therefore can overcome exposed persons without warning.
- CO can rapidly accumulate (even in areas appearing to be well ventilated).

7. ***Check Engine Air Filter Housing and Element***

- Unlatch the Air Filter Housing cover.
- Remove the Air Filter Element and inspect for dirt and debris.
- Reinstall Air Filter Element.
  - If dirt or debris is found, replace with new OEM AE002 Air Filter Element.

8. ***Ensure Overload Alarm and Oil Alert indicator lights on the Generator Control Panel are OFF,***
   See Fig. 1, ***next page***

9. ***Re-attach Generator Service Access door.***

- Verify latches at the sides of the access door are both turned to "Closed"
- Close the RV Generator Compartment door and secure in place

Starting and Operating the Generator

Starting and Operating the Generator

1. ***Before Starting or Operating the NPS Generator, familiarize yourself with the safety information section of the OEM Owner's Guide found in your Owner Information Package.***

2. ***After completing the Pre-Start Check and Inspection, close the Generator Service Access Door***
   - Turn latches on either side of the Service Access Door and verify both are secure.

3. ***Generator Cold Start would be first start of the day, a start after eight (8) hours of inactivity or a start in below freezing temperatures***

- Depress and hold Stop/Prime switch for ten (10) seconds allowing the Generator to prime the fuel pump
- Then PRESS and HOLD the Start switch until the Generator starts
- Remote Control Panel's light will blink and then remain steady once the Generator is running
- Allow the Generator to run a minimum of two (2) minutes before turning on devices or appliances connected to the Generator.

ATTENTION:

*See **page 112**, #2, Starting and Operating the Generator.*
The process is exactly the same for the Remote Start/Stop Switch inside the RV and the Start/Stop Switch on the Generator Control Panel inside the Generator Service Access Door. *See Fig. 1, right.*

Fig. 1

4. ***At any time after initial Cold Start warm-up has been completed, starting and stopping the Generator may be performed by:***

- Start/Stop Switch on Remote Panel inside the RV. *See Fig. 6, **on page 110.***
- Start/Stop Switch inside the Generator Service Access Door. See *Fig. 1, right.*
- Integrated Pull-Start inside the Generator Service Access Door.

ATTENTION:

To manually start the Generator with the Integrated Pull Start manual operation of the choke lever inside the Service Access Door will be required.

5. Wireless Hand-held Remote-Start Keyfob was created to conveniently allow you to start/stop your Generator from a distance of fifty (50) meters (164').
*See Fig. 7, **on page 114***

- To start the Generator, press and hold the "START" button for more than one (1) second and then release the button
- To stop the Generator, PRESS and HOLD the "STOP" button for more than one (1) second and then release the button.

DANGER

Generator Voltage Arc Flash and Electrical Shock Hazard:

Prior to working on live electrical equipment:

- Disconnect shore power to RV
- Disconnect negative (-) terminal battery or batteries
- Remove any metal or conductive apparel. Articles of jewelry and clothing such as metal: watch bands, bracelets, rings, keychains, necklaces, ear or other metal piercings,metalized aprons, cloth with conductive thread, or metal headgear shall not be worn.
- *29 CFR 1910.333(c)(8)*
- NPS recommends working on a dry non-conductive material
- Ensure clothes, hands and hair are dry

Generator - NPS, Continued

Fig. 7

Generator Keyfob Remote Start/Stop

⚠WARNING

NPS' Generator is not designed to be a primary source of power for life support systems or devices but can support temporary operating or charging of recreational or battery powered components.

Remote Start/Stop with the Generator Keyfob

- *See Fig. 7, left.*

The Keyfob you received with your RV will have its signals already matched to the Generator during installation. However, you will need to ***re-match*** the Generator and the Keyfob's wireless signals if you replace the Keyfob battery, you are using a replacement Keyfob, or you lose your signal.

- To match signals, CONNECT the Generator with the RV battery source, turn the Master 12 Volt Power Switch, inside the Generator Service Access Door, to the "ON" position. *See Fig. 1, above, right.*
- PRESS the *Signal Match Set* Button on the Remote Control Module and hold it for more than three (3) seconds until the Signal Match Indicator Light on the Remote Control Module stays on constant.
- Release the Signal Match Set Button and press the "STOP" button on the Keyfob (at this moment the Signal Match Indicator Light on the Remote Control Module will blink one time and then stay on constant).
- Release the "STOP" button on the Keyfob and press the "START" button on the Keyfob (at this moment the Signal Match Indicator Light on the Remote Control Module will blink one time and then stay on constant).
- Release the "START" button on the Keyfob, press and hold the Signal Match Set Button on the Remote Control Module until the Signal Match Indicator Light on the Remote Control Module is off.
- Start the Generator by pressing"START" on the Keyfob, then stop the Generator by pressing "STOP" on the Keyfob to verify the signals have matched.
    - If the match is not made, repeat the above procedure, until the Keyfob and Generator wireless signals are successfully matched.

Plumbing Systems

There are two separate water systems equipped on your RV, the *Fresh Water System* and the *Waste Water System*.

- The **Fresh Water System** consists of the *Fresh Water Holding Tank, Fresh Water Connections, Water Heater, Water Pump, Faucets, Shower/Tub, Outside Spray Port*, and if so equipped, a *Water Purification System.*
- The **Waste Water System** consists of the *Drains, Toilet, Grey Water* (waste water) *Holding Tank*, and *Black Water* (sewage) *Holding Tank*.

BEFORE each trip or vehicle storage, and as part of normal maintenance, inspect the following for leaks:

- ALL fittings on BOTH water systems.
- ALL faucet and sink connections (including drain baskets or filters).
- ALL water pump and water heater connections.
- **At the end of each trip, ALWAYS *completely* drain your fresh water system.**

Fresh Water System - First Use

Your new RV may have been winterized, as indicated by temporary labels located in the universal docking station.

- BEFORE first use, the system should be ***Sanitized*,** even if it has NOT been ***Winterized*.**
- Sanitizing the fresh water system will kill all bacteria and organisms that can contaminate your water supply.

Small amounts of contaminants and minerals are found in ALL water. Sometimes, they can cause your fresh water to have an odor. Usually, untreated well water is the source of water system odors.

*See **page 130**, Sanitizing the Fresh Water System.*

Grand Design Compass Connect® App

The *Grand Design Compass Connect®* application allows you to view the fill levels of your fresh water, grey water, and black water holding tanks on your smart phone or tablet.

- Please read the *Compass Connect®* manual found in your *Owner Information Package* before downloading and using the *Grand Design Compass Connect®* app.

*Also see **page 70**, Grand Design Compass Connect® App*

⚠WARNING

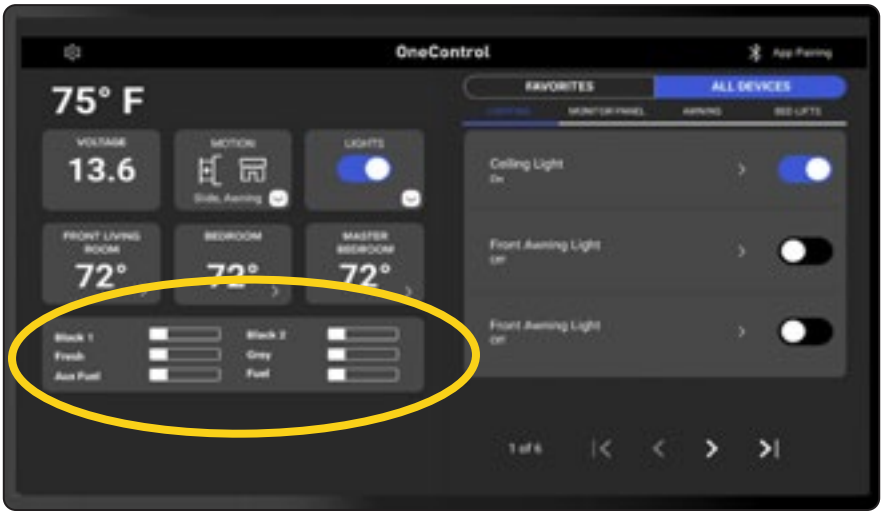
DO NOT drink water deemed microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality.

DO NOT remove the following label from your RV..

Typical winterization label.

*Scan the **QR Code**, above, with your tablet or smart-phone for the full **Compass Connect** manual.*

OneControl® Monitor Panel (If So Equipped)



The Monitor Panel is found on the home page of your OneControl® Touch Panel, See ***page 58****.*

- The *Monitor Panel* is found on the *OneControl® Touch Panel*. The bottom left hand side of this screen clearly displays the fill levels of your fresh, grey, and black water holding tanks.
- Each holding tank is equipped with a sensor to instantly relay the fill level to the display.
- Devices (ie., Ceiling Lights, Front Awning Lights, Rear Awning Lights, etc.) are listed on the right side of the screen.
  - **TOUCH** the "toggle button" for each to turn ON, *then*
  - **TOUCH** again to turn OFF.
- **TOUCH** the arrows at the bottom, right of the screen to scroll through the complete list of devices.
- The current voltage of your auxiliary battery is displayed next to the battery icon.
- **Water Tank Heater** ON/OFF is used during cold weather to prevent the holding tanks from freezing.
- **Water Pump Switch** - Is located on the Nautilus Panel. When the water pump switch is turned ON, the water pump runs until 45 pounds of pressure has been achieved. When pump is not in use, Turn OFF the water pump.

Monitor Panel (Equipped on G-Class)

The monitor panel is found on the interior Command Center. It displays the fill levels of your fresh water, grey water, and black water holding tanks. It also shows the voltage of your auxiliary battery. To make a selection, *PRESS* and *HOLD* one of the labeled buttons on the monitor panel faceplate. Each holding tank is equipped with a sensor to instantly relay the fill level to the LED display. *See photo* (*right*).

Monitor Panel

The monitor panel operates on 12-volt DC power supplied by either the converter or auxiliary battery. No power is drawn from the battery unless a button is pushed. Fuses for the monitor panel are located in the load center.

Operation

Press only one button at a time.

- When the *FRESH, GRAY, BLK 1,* or *BLK 2* button is pressed, the LED lights display the fill level of the selected holding tank.
- When the *BATT* button is pressed, the LED lights display the approximate voltage of your auxiliary battery.

Water pump switch

When the water pump switch is turned ON, the water pump runs until 45 pounds of pressure has been achieved.

- Turn OFF the water pump switch when water is not in use.

Water heater controller

The tankless water heater is operated by a wall controller located in the bathroom, NOT from the Command Center

- *See **page 118,** Water Heater, Furrion Tankless.*

G-Class Command Center

*Scan the **QR Code**, above, with your tablet or smartphone for the full digital version of the Furrion Tankless Water Heater Owner's Manual.*

Water Heater Wall Controller

DANGER

Suffocation or Fire Hazard

- Exhaust gases are hot and contain carbon monoxide, **do not** breath or obstruct the exhaust gases.

  Failure to follow the instruction will lead to serious injury, property damage or death.

Water Heater, Furrion Tankless

It is important to know which type of Water Heater is installed in your RV. Read all safety and operating information provided both here and in the manufacturer's manual before using the water heater. Based on the hot water demand, the tankless water heater will heat incoming cold water to a desired output temperature by monitoring key sensors to regulate the thermal energy released over a large heat exchanger. This creates a more useful and energy efficient heating system versus the conventional tank water heater that wastes fuel during re-heat cycles and is limited on volume output.

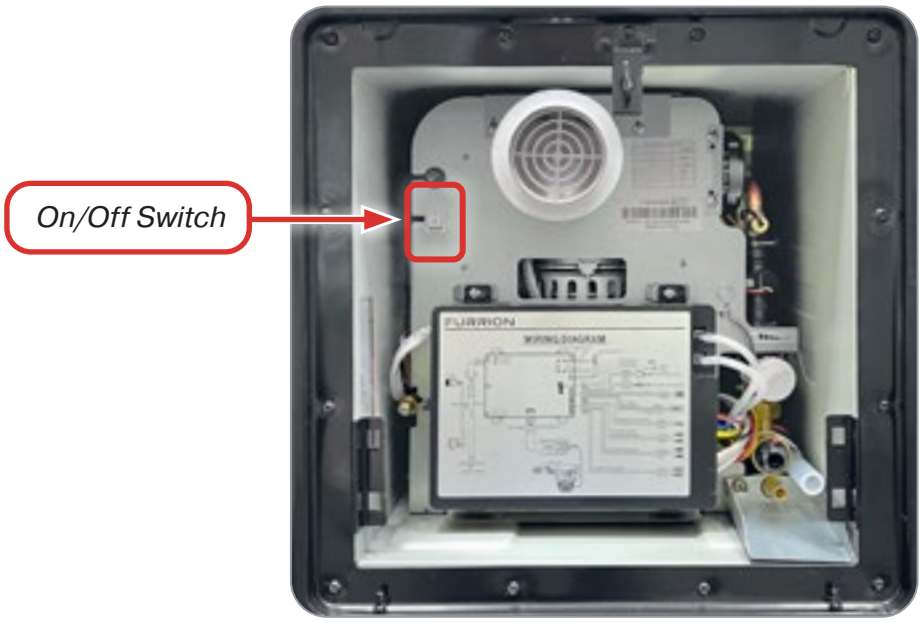
Controller Operation

Before normal operation of the appliance, perform a basic functional test check out each time the RV and water system is setup for use. Refer to "Functional Test" of this manual for instruction. After the Functional test is completed, the appliance can be operated from the wall controller which includes the Power switch. The control switch can be used for in living "ON/OFF" function.

1. Touch power button ⏻ to turn the power ON/OFF. The Furrion logo on the panel will be illuminated and display the current temperature setting.

NOTE: The micro processor is always on. It draws approximately 0.25 AMPs, but is advisable to turn off when not in use.

2. Touch button marked "°F/°C" to transform the temperature display in °F or °C, the related LED would be lighted on the controller.
3. Touch the △ or ▽ button to adjust the temperature to your desired settings. The wall controller settings are from 95°F (35°C) to 124°F (51°C).



Inside the Exterior Door Furrion Tankless Water Heater

The temperature can be selected to operate in two different methods:

Method 1:

Point of use mixing: Set the controller temperature to a desired output temperature, typically elevated above comfortable bathing temperatures. i.e. 115˚F (46˚C). Turn ON the hot water, once hot, add cold water to achieve desired temperature.

Method 2:

Single point use: Set the controller temperature to a desired output temperature for the faucet you want to use, typically set to the desired bathing temperature. i.e. 100˚F. The unit will maintain the set temperature by use of the hot water faucet only, no need to mix cold water.

4. Turn on the water faucet(s) and use as desired. The water temperature exiting the appliance (not faucet) will display.

Safe Operation

Consider the following points for safe use of the appliance:

- Install an RV water regulator to the inlet of the coach, and operate between (35-70PSI).
- The factory default water temperature setting is 115˚F (46˚C).d
- There may be a variation between the temperature delivered from the appliance and the temperature at the faucet due to water conditions between seasons like hot summer or the length of pipe from the appliance.
- Always check the water temperature, in reference to the chart below, by the display (step 3/4) and hand touch before bathing or with other hot water uses.

Temperature ˚F (˚C)	Time before skin becomes scalded
155˚F (68˚C)	1 Second
148˚F (64˚C)	2 Seconds
140˚F (60˚C)	5 Seconds
133˚F (56˚C)	15 Seconds
127˚F (52˚C)	1 Minute
124˚F (51˚C)	3 Minutes
120˚F (48˚C)	5 Minutes
100˚F (37˚C)	Safe Bathing Temperature

Source: Moritz, A.R. / Herriques, F.C.: Studies of thermal injuries: the relative importance of time and surface temperature in causation of cutaneous burns A. J. Pathol 1947; 23: 695 - 720.

⚠WARNING

If the information in the manufacturer instructions is not followed exactly, a fire or explosion may result causing property damage, personal injury or death.

Do not store or use gasoline or other flammable vapors and liquids in the vicinity of this or any other appliance.

WHAT TO DO IF YOU SMELL GAS:

- Evacuate all persons from vehicle.
- Shut off gas supply at gas container or source.
- DO NOT touch any electrical switch, or use any phone or radio in vehicle.
- DO NOT start vehicle's engine or electric generator.
- Contact nearest gas supplier or qualified service technician for repairs.
- If you cannot reach a gas supplier or qualified service technician, contact the nearest fire department.
- DO NOT turn on gas supply until gas leak(s) has been repaired.
- Installation and service must be performed by a qualified installer, service agency or the gas supplier.

Water Heater - Furrrion Tankless, Continued

WARNING

Both automotive antifreeze (ethylene glycol) and windshield washer anti-freeze (methanol) are poisonous.

NEVER use these products in your fresh water system. They are harmful and may be fatal if swallowed.

Winterizing the Furrion Tankless Water Heater & Plumbing System

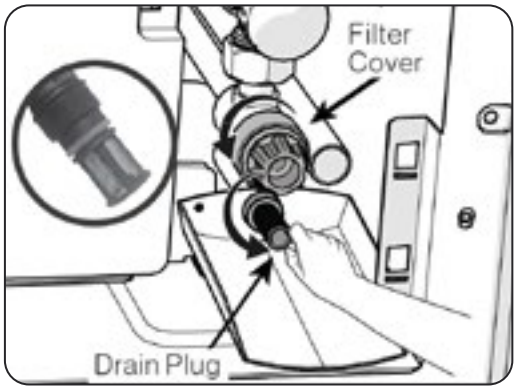
***Important:** Winterizing method varies depending on the type of Water Heater & Nautilus Panel installed in your RV. If you have questions on Winterizing your RV, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.*

***See page 148**, Winterize - Nautilus P4 User Instructions. Also See **page 131**, Winterizing the Plumbing System*.

Supplement the following important water heater instructions when completing any winterizing steps:

Drain & Blow Out Water Lines

1. SET the Nautilus Panel diverter handles to the ***City Water*** positions.
   - *See Nautilus Panel Photo, left*.
   - OPEN all faucets and low point drains.
   - ATTACH an air valve (with gauge) to the *City Water Connection* on the Nautilus Panel.
2. **APPLY no more than 30 PSI of air** to the *City Water Connection***.**
   - After water stops draining, SHUT OFF air.



Drain & Blow Out Water Heater

3. CLOSE all faucets & low point drains.
4. REMOVE the water heater drain plug and filter cover. *See the Diagram, lower left*.
5. **APPLY no more than 30 PSI of air** to the *City Water Connection* on the Nautilus Panel.
   - After water stops draining from the Water Heater, SHUT OFF air.

Adding RV antifreeze to the Furrion Tankless Water Heater:

6. REINSTALL the drain plug and filter cover.
7. With the Nautilus Panel diverter handles set to ***City Water*** positions:
   - ADD RV antifreeze at the *City Water Connection Following the winterizing steps listed on **page 147.***

When you are done adding RV antifreeze

8. REMOVE the *Suction Line* from the container of RV antifreeze.
9. REPLACE the cap on the end of *Suction Line*.

10. BLOW OUT the black tank flush line at the outside connection with compressed air (max 70 PSI).
11. *To prevent staining*, CLEAN any RV antifreeze from the sinks, shower (or tub), and toilet using a soft, dry cloth.

After Winterizing is complete

12. OPEN then CLOSE kitchen hot water faucet to release pressure in water line.

13. REMOVE the water heater drain plug and allow RV antifreeze to drain.

14. DO NOT replace drain plug /SAVE drain plug for re-use.

DO NOT USE YOUR WATER HEATER WHILE THE SYSTEM IS WINTERIZED. Heating when filled with antifreeze (or while drained) may cause unwarrantable damage to the water heater and/or other components of the plumbing system.

It is important to read all instructions & understand each step *before* you begin the winterization process. It may be easier to winterize the RV with a second person to assist you.

If you still have questions or concerns, contact your dealer for assistance.

Before you begin Winterizing:

If you have installed an aftermarket Water Filter, make sure that it is set to the ***bypass*** position.

Next Season:

- Thoroughly FLUSH the water heater and system with clean drinking water through the hot and cold side before using.
- FILL water heater at *City Water Connection* & DRAIN several times. *See draining steps* ***12-14*** (*above*).
- SANITIZE the water system per the recommendations of your coach manufacturer. *See* ***page 130.***

Water Control Valve

The water heater is equipped with a water flow control valve, set from the factory at MAX flow. The valve will reduce the water flow and capacity through the water heater to improve water heating performance. Under extreme conditions, it may be necessary to adjust the valve accordingly:

- Cold water inlet conditions approximately less than 45°F (7°C)
- Higher water inlet pressures >65 PSI.
  To operate (*Fig. 30*):
- REDUCE water flow: Rotate knob ***clockwise*** until a solid stop.
- INCREASE water flow: Rotate knob ***counter clockwise*** until a solid stop.

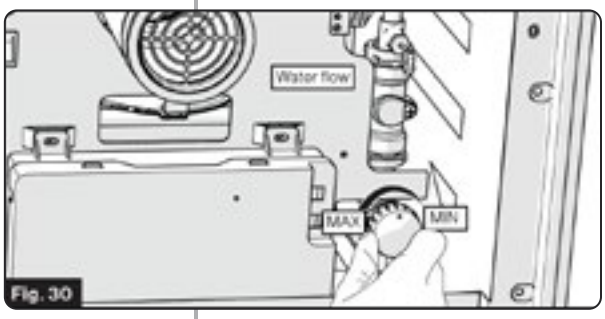


Fig. 30

High Altitude Use

This appliance can be used at high altitude and has been tested up to 4500ft. For prolonged use at higher altitudes please contact **support@furrion**.com

Water Heater - Furrrion Tankless, Continued

⚠ CAUTION

PRODUCT DAMAGE DUE TO FROST CONDITION

In frost conditions, ambient temperatures below 39°F (4°C), there is a risk that water in pipes, faucets and appliance could freeze.

This can cause considerable damage.

Antifreeze Function
(*for FWH09AFA and FWH09AFA-AM models only*)

- The water heater can be used in freezing conditions, by operating a burner sequence program to keep the water liquid. This function turns ON automatically when water in the appliance falls below 43°F (6°C), then automatically shuts OFF when it is warmed.
- It will likely be necessary to manually adjust the water control valve to the "**min**" setting when using the water heater in freezing conditions.
- If the RV is to be stored, with no use, the water heater **must be *winterized*** appropriately per the instructions on ***page 120.***
- The freeze protection system only protects the water heater appliance from freezing and will NOT prevent freezing of the water system in the coach. Ensure the coach is properly insulated and protected from freezing conditions.
- It is normal for the water heater to operate the burner system at different frequencies and duration for this mode.

NOTE: The ANTIFREEZE function will NOT operate if any of the following are turned OFF:

- Water Heater Appliance
- 12V+ house electric
- Gas Supply

Storage and Transit

Anytime the RV is not intended to be used, it is considered to be in storage or transit. To prepare the water heater, follow the below steps:

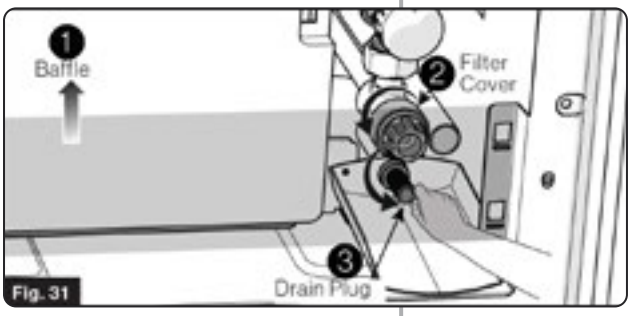


Fig. 31

1. Turn off gas supply.
2. Turn off water heater main switch.
3. Drain water out of the system and water heater by removing the filter cover and drain plug (*Fig. 31*)
4. If freezing conditions could occur, then the water heater **must be *winterized*** appropriately per the instructions on ***page 120***.

Routine Inspection

Routine inspection is critical for maintaining proper operation of your appliance. Unless specified, review the following items yearly or before each season:

1. Inspect the gas system and installation every two years, or otherwise specified by your RV coach manufacturer, by a qualified personnel.
2. Inspect for cracks, separation, peeling of seals to the RV wall. Remove and re-seal as necessary (caulking or tape) between the side wall and the door of the water heater and ensure that the unit is solidly mounted to the vehicle.
3. Verify that the air inlet openings (louvers) are completely open and clear of any debris including mud, leaves, twigs, insects, etc. Remove all obstructions to allow full air flow.
4. Insects, including wasps and spiders, can build nests in the exhaust tube outlet which will affect the performance of the unit. Inspect the flue outlet tube to make sure that it is unobstructed and that the screen is clean. If debris or insects are present, clean and vacuum to remove any remaining debris. The use of any type of after-market screen to cover the vent is not permitted and will void the warranty.
5. Open the door and verify that no debris or extraneous combustible materials are present anywhere (especially in the area of the burner and the gas controls). Remove any item present and wipe clean the bottom of the housing.
6. Inspect the interior surface of the housing for any cracks or corroded areas that could allow penetration of gases into or out of the interior of the vehicle.

- Check especially around the hot water, cold water, gas and electrical connections.

  NOTE: If damages found, please contact a technician to repair or contact Furrion customer service.

7. Check that all wire connections are firmly in place and there are no signs of chafing or cracks on the insulation. Verify that the spark ignition cable between the Control Board and the igniter is securely in place and not shorted to any metal component.
8. Inspect the pressure safety valve to ensure it has not been leaking (no water residue). *See* "*Pressure Safety Valve Maintenance*" for further inspection. (*Fig. 32*)
9. Inspect / clean / replace water inlet filter as necessary, see "Filter Cleaning" section.

⚠ CAUTION

Always wear protective gear such as gloves, eyewear and clothing to avoid injuries during installation and servicing of the product.

⚠ WARNING

Burn or Scald Hazard

- NEVER perform work while the water heater is operating.
- NEVER perform work without turning the Electrical and LP gas supply off.
- NEVER perform work when the appliance is hot.
- NEVER actuate the pressure relief valve as long as the appliance is still hot.
- Never actuate the Drain Plug as long as the appliance is under water pressure and/or is still hot.

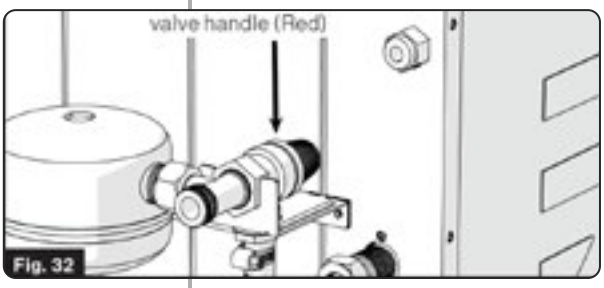


Fig. 32

Water Heater - Furrrion Tankless, Continued

10. Turn on the power to the water heater and open a hot water faucet to inspect the flame of the burner. The flame should be of the normal bluish appearance that indicates proper combustion. This can be accomplished by removing the water heater door and baffle to observe the flames by looking at the burner under the edge of the heat exchanger. (*Fig. 33*)

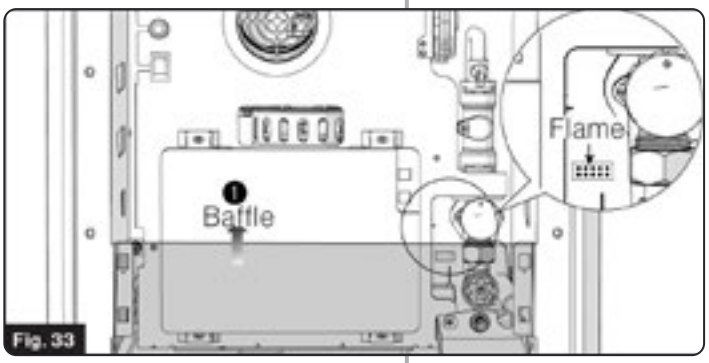


Fig. 33

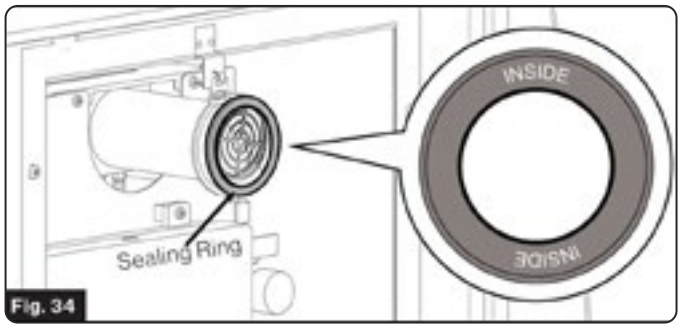


Fig. 34

11. A sealing ring is assembled on the chimney. (*Fig. 34*) Inspect to make sure the seal does not have any cracks or breaks, and that it is in good condition. *Contact Furrion for replacement.*

    NOTE: When installing the seal, make sure the words "INSIDE" are facing inward.

⚠WARNING

Burn or Scald Hazard

- Never actuate the pressure relief valve while the appliance is in operation.
- Never tamper with the pressure relief valve.

Filter Cleaning

There is a filter screen on the Water Heater inlet water line connection. The filter screen needs to be cleaned periodically to prevent blockages from forming. Follow below steps below to clean the filter: (*Fig. 35*)

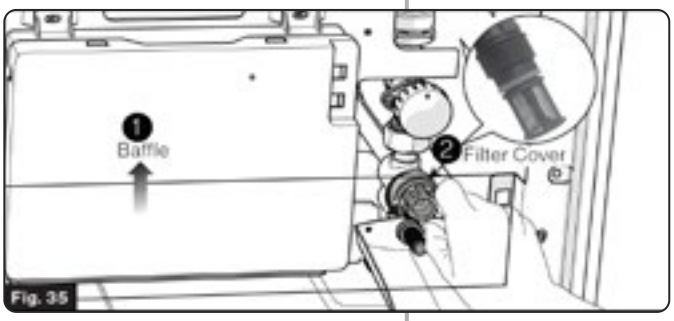


Fig. 35

1. ***Step 1:*** Open the door of the Water Heater, remove the baffle.
2. ***Step 2:*** Unscrew the filter cover by hand or a proper tool ***counter clockwise***.
3. Clean the screen filter by flushing any debris accumulated.

Pressure Safety Valve Maintenance

1. The unit is equipped with a water pressure safety valve. The pressure safety valve needs to operate once each year to ensure this safety device is effective.
2. The pressure relief valve is a safety component and must not be removed for any reason other than replacement.

   NOTE: The pressure relief valve must be replaced by a certified service technician if defective.
3. Tampering with the pressure relief valve will void the warranty.
4. *On the back of the water heater:*
   ROTATE the pressure safety valve handle (Red) about 3~5 times counterclockwise. (*Fig. 36*)
5. Check the drain hose for water. (*Fig. 37*)
   Water in the drain hose indicates the pressure safety valve is working properly.

   NOTE: Never actuate the drain plug as long as the appliance is still hot.

Fig. 36

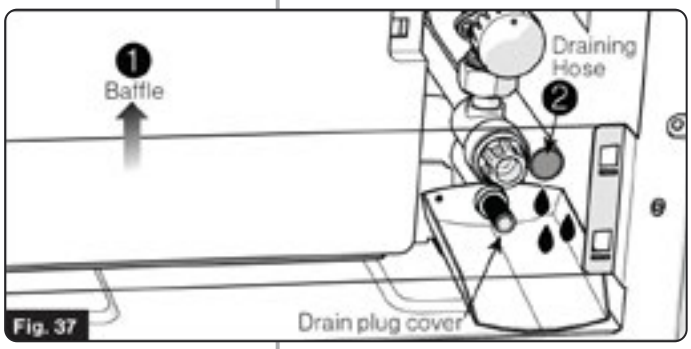


Fig. 37

Hard Water and Decalcification

For prolong usage, when exposed to higher water hardness concentrations, it is advised to provide a proper water treatment device for the incoming water to the coach.

- Hard water may lead to performance reduction of your appliance overtime.
- *Contact Furrion for decalcification instructions.*

The Nautilus P4 System Is Located On The Forward Off-Door Side

Water Control System

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel is equipped with a *Nautilus P4 Water Control System*. For instructions on the operation of your water control system, *See* ***page 137***, *Nautilus P4 User Instructions* included in this manual.

Draining and winterizing

If the RV is to be stored over the winter months, the water heater must be winterized to prevent damage from freezing.

Important: Winterizing method varies depending on the type of Water Heater & Nautilus Panel installed in your RV. If you have questions on Winterizing your RV, please contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

- ***Also see: page 112****, Winterizing the Furrion Tankless Water Heater & Plumbing System.*

NOTICE

BE CAREFUL not to overfill the fresh water holding tank.

This can pressurize the tank, causing leakage & water damage, and also void your warranty.

DO NOT leave the tank unattended while filling.

NOTICE

The fresh water connection should be unplugged (*i.e. the non-toxic drinking water hose disconnected*) when the RV is left unattended for any amount of time.

If something would happen to the water system, this may help limit water damage to a smaller area.

Fresh Water Holding Tank

The fresh water tank can be pressure filled using the fresh water inlet (called city water). Plastic overflow tubes are plumbed into the fresh water holding tank to allow water to flow out of the water tank. Occasionally, you may see water coming from the overflow tubes (located underneath the RV) when the fresh water holding tank is filled. This is normal, and is caused by external circumstances, including the RV being parked on an incline, or the motion caused by starting or stopping the RV during travel.

- DO NOT cap, block or modify the fresh water tank overflow tubes in any way.
- If the overflow tubes are obstructed, enough water pressure can build up during the filling process to damage the plumbing system.

12-Volt Water Pump

Once activated, the Water Pump (*or on-demand pump*) will self-prime, and provide water. The water pump continues to run until approximately 45 lbs. of pressure is achieved, then shuts off. The water pump will automatically restart when pressure drops. Some cycling may occur, depending on the volume of water being released. The water pump has a built-in check valve to prevent water from back flowing.

Water pump filter (if so equipped) is a screen filter located on the inlet side. This reusable screen must be cleaned periodically.

Water Filter (If So Equipped)

For units equipped with a Water Filter at the Universal Docking Station, please follow all instructions found in the Owner's Information Package and the Label on the Filter housing.

- For best results replace filter cartridge ***seasonally***.
- *See **page 131**, Additional Winterizing Instructions* (*Note*).

Water Pressure Regulator (Customer Supplied)

In some RV parks (especially in mountain regions), excessive pressure from water supply systems may be encountered.

- *A Water Pressure Regulator* (available for purchase from your RV dealer) will help to protect your plumbing system against damage from a high pressure water supply.

NOTICE

Not using a Water Pressure Regulator when using city water may cause the o-rings to fail.

To prevent damage to the plumbing system or components when using the city water connection, a Water Pressure Regulator rated for 40 lbs. is recommended.

Bathroom Shower

Unlike your home, the RV does not contain a water pressure balance valve. When the shower is in use, DO NOT run any other water until shower is finished. Air may need to be bled out of the plumbing lines before a steady stream of water flows.

1. Keep aware of the water heater and holding tank capacities. All water used, will drain through the plumbing lines into the *Grey Water Holding Tank*.
2. CHECK that the *Water Heater* is turned ON *and* allow sufficient time for the water to heat.

- ***If dry camping,*** TURN ON the *12-volt Water Pump*.

3. Turn ON the hot and cold knobs, and ADJUST the water temperature *before* showering.
4. To conserve water while showering, wet down & turn OFF the water while using soap, *then* rinse.
5. When shower is finished, shut OFF the hot and cold knobs.

- There is no *Shut-Off Valve* for the showerhead; shut-off is at the hot and cold knobs only.
- The showerhead may still drip slightly after use, even in the OFF position. **This is normal.** *It does NOT indicate a leak or defect.*

Maintenance

The shower walls in your RV are made of *fiberglass*. ***CLEAN with a mild detergent soap and warm water ONLY.***

- DO NOT clean with gritty or abrasive particle soaps or scouring compounds.
- *Please also refer to the manufacturer's manual.*

Faucets

The faucets inside your RV operate much the same way as the faucets in your home.

- CHECK that the amount of water available is sufficient, *and* ***If dry camping,*** Turn ON the *12-volt Water Pump*.
- To OPEN the faucets, Turn ON the hot and cold knobs, *then* ADJUST the temperature to your comfort level.
- CLOSE the faucets when a sufficient amount of water is released.

Exterior Spray Port

Exterior Spray Port

A Quick-Connect Spray Port is found at the *Universal Docking Station* for washing / rinsing outside your RV.

To use:

1. ATTACH the supplied *Quick-Connect Hose and Sprayer* to your Spray Port.
2. CHECK that the *Water Heater* is turned ON *and* allow sufficient time for the water to heat.

- ***If dry camping,*** Turn ON the *12-volt Water Pump*.

3. TURN ON the hot and cold knobs, ADJUST the water temperature as desired.

When finished:

- TURN OFF the hot and cold knobs.
- DISCONNECT the quick connect hose and drain any excess water from the hose and sprayer nozzle.

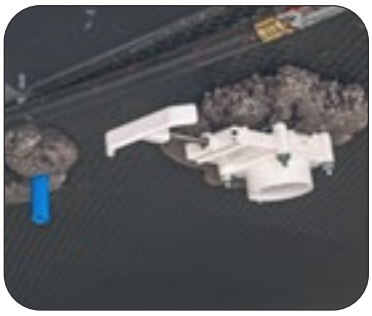
Draining the Fresh Water System

The low-point drain valves release water in the supply lines by opening the valves and all faucets. The water heater has its own drain plug. To drain the permanent fresh water holding tank and supply lines:

1. OPEN all faucets, including the outside shower.
2. OPEN the *Fresh Water Holding Tank Gate Valve(s).* This is the white T-handle located under the RV, close to the axles. Select models have more than one. *See Photo, bottom, right.*
3. OPEN red and blue low point drain valves in the outside utility center. *See Photo, top, right.*
4. DRAIN the sink by removing the *drain cap*.
5. Turn ON the water pump and allow it to run as needed.
6. Set the *water heater bypass valve* to **Normal** (horizontal).
7. **ALWAYS** use the water heater ***Pressure Safety Valve*** to relieve any water pressure, BEFORE removing the water heater drain plug.
    - Even a small amount of water pressure may cause water to spray out when the drain plug is removed.
    - *See Photo, on **page 125***
8. REMOVE the water heater drain plug.

AFTER draining the Fresh Water System, REVERSE these steps. *Next*, dump the grey and black water holding tanks at an appropriate facility according to local public codes. It is normal for a small amount of liquid to remain in the fresh water tank after draining is complete.

Low-Point Drains are located in the Universal Docking Station



Fresh Water Holding Tank Gate Valve, located under the RV

Sanitizing the Fresh Water System

Use the following procedures to sanitize your Fresh Water System (*or Potable Water System)* when it is new, becomes contaminated, or has not been used for a period of time.

- PREPARE a *Chlorine Solution* using one (1) gallon of water and one-quarter (1/4) cup of household bleach (5% Sodium Hypochlorite solution).
- PREPARE approximately one (1) gallon of solution for every fifteen (15) gallons of holding tank capacity.

NOTE: As an option, several commercial solutions are available, and should be used as directed on the package.

To improve suction from the pump:

- Use a shorter length of garden hose.
- Raise the container of solution level with the Nautilus panel.

To sanitize the fresh water tank & fresh water system:

1. LEVEL the RV.
2. OPEN the *Fresh Water Holding Tank Gate Valve(s)* to drain all water from the tank. CLOSE the valve when drained.
3. CHECK that the *Low Point Drain Valves* are CLOSED.
4. Please refer to ***page 144-145***, *Nautilus P4 Manual,* for detailed procedures and specific valve positions.
5. CONNECT a **garden hose** to the *City Water Connection.* ***DO NOT use your fresh (potable) water hose***.
   - PLACE the other end of the hose into the container of ****Chlorine Solution***. *See Photo, left.*
6. Turn ON the *12-volt Water Pump.*
   - When the ****Solution*** container is empty, Turn OFF the pump.
7. Complete filling the tank with fresh water.
8. Operate ALL faucets to release trapped air, *then* Turn OFF the pump.
9. ALLOW the solution to stand for three (3) hours.
10. DRAIN tank and FLUSH the system with fresh water.

To remove excessive chlorine odor or taste which may remain:

11. PREPARE a *Vinegar Solution* of one (1) quart vinegar to five (5) gallons water and ***repeat steps 3-10*** above.
    - **At step 5**, place the other end of the hose into the container of ****Vinegar Solution***. Allow solution to agitate in tank by intermittent vehicle motion (several days if possible).

Winterizing the Plumbing System

Preparing your RV for storage is very important in climates that experience cold weather. ***Also see page 120**, Winterizing the Furrion Tankless Water Heater & Plumbing System.*

Follow the steps listed below at the end of the camping season:

- ALWAYS winterize the fresh water system of your RV BEFORE exposure to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C).
  - *Damage to the water supply lines or water heater due to freezing is not covered under warranty***.**
- **Winterize with *RV Antifreeze* ONLY**, no other products should ever be added to your fresh water system.
  - Make sure to have enough RV antifreeze to winterize all fresh water lines. *Several gallons may be required***.**
- **BEFORE Winterizing, the *Fresh Water, Black Water & Gray Water plumbing systems MUST all be emptied. See page 129 & page 134.***

1. LEVEL the RV, and DRAIN the fresh water plumbing system.
2. Turn OFF the *Water Heater 12-volt and 120-volt interior control switches*.
3. Please refer to ***page 148-150***, *Nautilus P4 User Instructions* for detailed procedures and specific valve positions.
4. OPEN the *Fresh Water Holding Tank Gate Valve*, and CLOSE both *low point drains*.
5. CONNECT a **garden hose** to the *City Water Connection.* ***DO NOT use your fresh (potable) water hose.***
   - PLACE the other end of the hose into a container of ***RV Antifreeze.***
6. PRIME the pump by filling the hose with RV antifreeze, *then* Turn ON the *Water Pump*.
7. OPEN the ****hot*** water line at each faucet. (*Kitchen, Lavatory, Shower, & Outside Faucet/Spray Port*)
   - CLOSE each ****hot*** water line faucet when RV antifreeze begins to flow continuously
8. REPEAT ***Step 7*** with the ****cold*** water lines on all faucets. It is also important to run RV antifreeze through the *Toilet and the Sink/Shower Drains*.

When you are done adding RV antifreeze

9. BLOW OUT the black tank flush line at the outside connection with compressed air (max 70 PSI).
10. *To prevent staining*, CLEAN any RV antifreeze from the sinks, shower (or tub), and toilet using a soft, dry cloth.

⚠WARNING

Both automotive antifreeze (ethylene glycol) and windshield washer anti-freeze (methanol) are poisonous.

NEVER use these products in your fresh water system. They are harmful and may be fatal if swallowed.

It is important to read all instructions & understand each step before you begin the winterization process. It may be easier to winterize the RV with another person to assist you. If needed, contact your dealer for assistance.

Additional Winterizing Instructions

For RVs equipped with a Water Filter at the Universal Docking Station:

- **DO NOT allow the Filter Housing to freeze!**
- **REMOVE the filter cartridge before using antifreeze to winterize system.**
- **REINSTALL the empty filter housing back on the cap.**
- **Proceed to WINTERIZE coach.**
- **FLUSH the housing thoroughly before it is put back into service after winterizing.**

Black Water & Grey Water Systems

Your RV toilet drains into the *Black Water* (sewage) *Holding Tank*. The sinks and shower drain into the *Grey Water* (waste water) *Holding Tank*.

- ALWAYS empty the *Black* and *Grey Water Holding Tanks* BEFORE traveling to avoid carrying unnecessary weight.
- If you are dry camping and cannot immediately empty your holding tanks, reduce your vehicle speed until you reach a dumping station.
- The *Cargo Carrying Capacity* of your RV is based on ***empty*** holding tanks. Any additional weight for the contents of your holding tank(s) ***reduces*** your *Cargo Carrying Capacity* by the same amount.

Traveling with your holding tank(s) full could result in the following conditions:

- Reduced available cargo capacity.
- Exceeding individual tire ratings and/or the GAWR or GVWR.
- Potential damage to suspension components, such as springs, tires and axles.
- Reduced hitch weight, if your RV holding tank(s) are located behind the axles.
- Trailer sway and other handling difficulties, as a result of the hitch weight being too light.

WARNING

NEVER travel with full black or grey water holding tanks. This not only wastes your fuel but depending on the location of the tank(s), it can affect your tow vehicle handling characteristics.

NOTICE

DO NOT add automotive antifreeze or caustic chemicals such as laundry detergents into the holding tanks. Although these products may have a deodorizing effect, they may damage the plastic and rubber parts of the plumbing system or the components.

Toilet

Your RV toilet uses only one to three quarts (*or 1-3 liters*) of water per flush, about *ten times less* than a residential toilet. Additional water may be needed to flush solids from the drain line into the holding tank.

- **ALWAYS continue to run water for an extra 10-15 seconds *after flushing*.**
- **NOT flushing with enough water, can result in clogged pipes or tanks.**

To help prevent a toilet blockage:

- ***Before use:*** FLUSH the toilet several times, releasing enough water to cover the bottom of the holding tank.
- ALWAYS maintain four to six inches (10-15 cm) of water in the toilet for better performance.
- ALWAYS use RV grade, single-ply toilet paper.
- NEVER flush *any* foreign objects down the RV toilet (*hygiene products, cleaning wipes, paper towels, diapers*).

Cleaning and maintenance

- CLEAN the toilet regularly.
- DO NOT use undiluted chlorine or caustic chemicals (*laundry bleach, chemical drain openers*) in the RV toilet.
    - These products will DAMAGE the seals in the toilet and dump valves.
- Applying petroleum jelly to a *sticky* toilet ball valve will provide waterproof lubrication without damaging the seals.

Black & Grey Water Holding Tanks

Black water (*sewage*) tank preparation

- Adding an RV holding tank deodorizer (customer supplied) will help break down tank contents and control odors.

DO THE FOLLOWING

- **BEFORE the first use, *and* AFTER dumping the holding tanks** (*unless you are winterizing your RV*)**:**

1. RELEASE one to two quarts (1-2 *liters*) of water into the toilet bowl.
2. ADD the tank deodorizer (customer supplied) to your black water tank per the packaging instructions.
3. FLUSH the toilet and allow at least two gallons (8 *liters*) of water to flow into the holding tank..

Grey water (*waste water*) tank preparation

No special preparation is required. If needed, control odors from the grey water system by adding a small quantity of baking soda or RV holding tank deodorizer down the sink or shower drain.

Emptying the Black & Grey Water Tanks

The black tank and grey tank drain valves (*or dump valves*) are located near the *Sewer Outlet Connection*, under the RV on the off-door side, and/or in the utility center.

- **ALWAYS drain the black water holding tank FIRST.**
- **THEN, drain the grey tank waste water to help rinse any solids from the sewer outlet and hose.**

1. Driving to a disposal site will normally loosen any accumulated waste solids from the sides of the holding tanks.
2. To make drainage easier, LEVEL the RV.
3. LOCATE the *Sewer Outlet Connection,*
   - REMOVE the sewer hose housing dust cap, *and*
   - ATTACH your sewer hose (customer supplied).
4. PLACE the other end of the sewer hose into the approved dump station.
5. OPEN the black tank dump valve by carefully ***pulling*** the handle out towards you.
   - CLOSE it by ***pushing*** the handle shut after the black water holding tank has drained.
6. EMPTY each grey water holding tank (one at a time).
   - OPEN the 1st Grey Tank dump valve
   - CLOSE the valve after the tank has drained.
   - REPEAT for the 2nd Grey Tank.
7. REMOVE, CLEAN and STORE the sewer hose.
8. CLOSE the sewer hose housing dust cap.

When connected to a (campground) sewer drain

- Keep the *Black Tank Drain Valve* CLOSED until the holding tank is *at least* ¾ full. This should provide enough water to completely drain the holding tank.
- DO NOT leave the *Black Tank Drain* in the OPEN position.

NOTICE

It is important to prevent solid waste buildup. Follow the toilet manufacturer's recommended instructions each time the black water holding tank is emptied.

Sewer cap must be securely in place while the vehicle is in motion.

Sewer Outlet Connection Is Located Under the RV on the Off-Door Side

Dump station locations

Dump station locations throughout the United States and Canada can be found on many websites and publications including Woodall's, Rand McNally Camp Guide, Good Sam Camp Guide, KOA Kampgrounds Camp Guide. Some gas stations also have dump stations.

If you need assistance with the purchase or installation of a sewer hose or hose extension, Please contact your dealer.

Vents & Vent Pipes

For the *Plumbing System* to DRAIN properly, the vents and vent pipes ***must*** release air from the grey &black water holding tanks

- ALWAYS keep the exterior vent cap on the roof clear of any obstructions.
- In some models the vent pipe may be a *wet vent* allowing water to drain downward with air flowing upward in the same pipe.

Drain Pipes With Dry Sealing Valve

Your RV may be equipped with a dry sealing valve to prevent the escape of odors from your waste system and eliminate the need for P-traps. Should the RV drain piping system become clogged, a mechanical clean-out tool is used to open the drain pipe.

- **It is important to remove the dry valve before passing the clean-out tool through the piping.**
- **Passing a mechanical clean-out tool through the waterless valve may cause damage to the internal seal that may potentially allow sewer gases to escape to the RV interior.**

NOTICE

Remove the waterless trap before using mechanical drain cleaning devices. Waterless trap can be damaged.

Drain Pipes With P-Traps

The drain pipes may be equipped with a *P-trap* installed to help prevent odors from escaping into the RV. During travel, water from the P-traps may spill and permit odors into the RV.

- By adding water and using a RV approved deodorizing agent you will dissolve the contents faster and will keep the drain lines and tanks clean and free flowing.
- These chemicals are available at an RV supply store or your dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

DO NOT use the tank flush valve unless the fullway termination valve (gate valve) is in the open position.

This can result in an unsanitary condition leading to illness or personal injury.

NOTICE

When flushing the black tank, the gate valve must be open or damage may occur to the system.

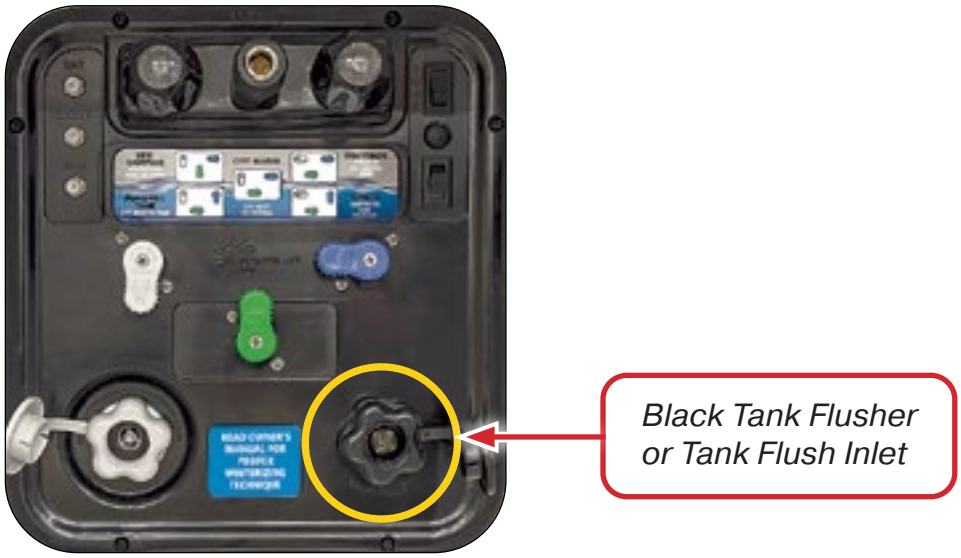
Black Tank Flusher

The black tank flusher is designed to rinse the interior of the black (waste) tank. A separate water hookup is located in the docking station. *Also see TANK FLUSH,* ***page 151-152****, Nautilus P4 Manual.*

To flush the tank after dumping:

1. Leave the *Sewer Hose* connected to the *Outlet Pipe*. CHECK that it is routed to the dump station inlet.
2. CONNECT a **garden hose** to the *Black Tank Flusher Inlet*. ***DO NOT use your fresh (potable) water hose***.
3. OPEN the *Black Tank Gate Valve*.
4. OPEN the water supply to full pressure to flush tank.
5. When the water runs clear from the sewer hose, SHUT OFF the water supply, *then*
   - DISCONNECT the garden hose from the water source.
6. DO NOT disconnect the hose from flush inlet UNTIL all water has drained from the system.

DO NOT add any check valves to this system or leave any hose connected when not in use.



The Nautilus P4 System

Nautilus P4 (*3-Handle*) Manual

NAUTILUS P4

3 - HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

B&B MOLDERS LLC

www.bandbmolders.com
58471 Fir Road
Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: 574-259-7838
Fax: 574-259-7939

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Congratulations on purchasing an RV equipped with the most advanced water management system available today! Be sure to read all *Caution* and *User* Instructions on the Nautilus Panel and in your Owner's Manual before performing any operation using the Nautilus Panel System.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

IMPORTANT!!

NEVER push check valve on "**CITY WATER**" connection with pressure in line. This **WILL** cause irreparable damage to the check valve function.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

The Nautilus P4 Panel System will allow you to perform the following functions:

1. Power fill your fresh water tank for remote or dry camping
2. Use your pump to supply water to fixtures from fresh water tank
3. Use your pump to siphon fill or sanitize your fresh water tank from a bucket
4. Connect to city water at the camping site to supply water to fixtures
5. Winterize your plumbing lines and fixtures
6. Rinse black tank to help control odors and prevent sewage buildup
7. Rinse off items outside unit with a hot/cold faucet
8. Connect coax lines with satellite, cable and auxiliary

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

Nautilus P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Nautilus P4 Handle Position and Valve Routing Information

WHITE HANDLE: Receives water from water inlet on front of panel

Sideways - water goes to pump inlet

Down – water goes into blue handled diverter

BLUE HANDLE: Receives water from the white handle valve/water inlet on front of panel

Sideways - water goes to fixtures (cold)

Down – water will go to or come from fresh water tank

GREEN HANDLE: Is an on/off flow through valve that feeds pump from fresh water tank

Sideways - water will not flow through valve

Up – water will go to or come from fresh water tank

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

CONNECTING COAX FOR CABLE AND/OR SATELLITE

1. For cable TV connection, connect the threaded coax from the source to the **"CABLE"** connection.

2. For satellite TV connection, connect the threaded coax from the satellite dish to the **"SAT"** connection.

3. Consult your Owner's Manual to see if the **"AUX"** connection has an application.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Power Filling Fresh Water Tank "PowerFILL Tank"

1. Connect garden hose to inlet labeled "**CITY WATER**."

2. Turn handles to **PowerFILL Tank** position as shown.

- **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing down.
- **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing down.
- **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing left.

3. Connect other end of hose to water supply source.

4. Turn water supply on at source. Fresh water tank should begin to fill.

NOTE: Consult your Owner's Manual for tank capacity. D**O NOT OVERFILL TANK!**

5. When desired level in fresh water tank is reached, turn water off at source.
6. Disconnect garden hose from inlet on Nautilus panel.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Fill or Sanitize Fresh Water Tank via Pump "SANITIZE"

1. Connect garden hose to inlet labeled **"CITY WATER."**

2. Turn handles to "**SANITIZE**" position as shown.

- **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing down.
- **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing right.
- **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing left.

3. Place other end of hose in container holding water or sanitizing solution.

4. Push **"PUMP"** switch to turn pump on.

NOTE: LED indicator light below the pump switch will be lit if pump has power.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

Fill or Sanitize Fresh Water Tank via Pump "SANITIZE"

5. Pump should be running and fresh water tank should begin to fill.

NOTE: Consult your Owner's Manual for tank capacity. **DO NOT OVERFILL TANK!**

6. When desired level in fresh water tank is reached, push "**PUMP**" switch to turn pump off.

NOTE: LED indicator light below the pump switch will not be lit.

7. Disconnect garden hose from inlet on Nautilus panel.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Using Pump to Supply Water from Fresh Tank "DRY CAMPING"

1. Make sure fresh water tank has necessary supply of water.

2. Turn handles to "**DRY CAMPING**" position as shown.

- **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing left.
- **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing down.
- **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing up

3. Push **"PUMP"** switch to turn pump on.

NOTE: LED indicator light below the pump switch will be lit if pump has power.

4. Water should be available to all fixtures.

NOTE: The pump will run when a plumbing fixture is open.

5. Make sure pump is turned off when not in use.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Using System from Pressurized Water Source "CITY WATER"

1. Connect garden to hose to inlet **"CITY WATER."**

2. Turn handles to "**CITY WATER**" position.

- **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing left.
- **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing down.
- **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing left.

3. Connect other end of hose to water supply source.

4. Open faucet at water supply source. Water should be available to all fixtures.

NOTE: Refer to OEM Owner's Manual for safe operating pressures.

Over pressurizing water lines may cause damage to plumbing lines and fixtures.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Winterizing Plumbing Lines and Fixtures "WINTERIZE"

1. Turn handles to "**POWERFILL**" position as shown.

- **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing down.
- **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing down.
- **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing left.

***NOTE:* Contact the manufacturer to see how and if you need to bypass your Water Heater.**

***See page 120, Winterizing the Furrion Tankless Water Heater*& Plumbing System.**

2. Open low point drain(s) on RV to remove water in plumbing lines. Open both a hot and cold faucet to help drainage process.

3. Open drain plug on hot water heater to drain water if unit is equipped with hot water holding tank.

NOTE: Contact your dealer or manufacturer for exact location of low point drains and hot water heater.

4. Once most water has been drained from plumbing lines, turn **BLUE**, **GREEN** and **WHITE** handles so they are at a 45 degree angle as shown.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Winterizing Plumbing Lines and Fixtures "WINTERIZE"

5. Using "**CITY WATER**" inlet or low point drain, blow out plumbing lines (40 PSI max) with handles still at 45 degree angle as shown. This will ensure any trapped water in plumbing harness is removed.

6. Close drains on hot water tank & low point drains.

7. Turn handles to "**WINTERIZE**" position as shown.

- **BLUE** diverter handle should be facing left.
- **WHITE** diverter handle should be facing right.
- **GREEN** diverter handle should be facing left.

8. Connect a short section of garden hose to inlet labeled **"CITY WATER."**

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Winterizing Plumbing Lines and Fixtures "WINTERIZE"

9. Place other end of garden hose in container holding approved winterizing solution.

NOTE: A short or cut off section of garden hose should help the pump to prime easier.

10. Push **"PUMP"** switch to turn pump on.

NOTE: LED indicator light below the pump switch will be lit if pump has power.

11. Pump should be running and winterizing solution should begin to flow through pump into plumbing lines and fixtures.

NOTE: The pump will run when a plumbing fixture is open.

12. Open one plumbing fixture, keeping it open until winterization solution appears, then close.

13. Follow above procedure until all inside & outside plumbing fixtures have been winterized hot & cold sides of plumbing fixtures.

<u>Important!</u> Make sure to run winterizing solution through hot & cold lines on exterior shower.

14. Push "**PUMP**" switch to turn off pump.

NOTE: LED indicator light below the pump switch will not be lit.

15. Disconnect garden hose from "**CITY WATER**" inlet.

NOTE: It is normal for some winterizing solution to be present as hose is being disconnected.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Rinsing the Waste Tank "TANK FLUSH"

1. Connect flexible sewer hose to 4" dump outlet on unit.

2. Open black waste holding tank valve and leave open to allow black tank to drain.

3. Attach a garden hose to inlet labeled **"TANK FLUSH."**

NOTE: Handle throw does not matter.

4. Connect other end of hose to water supply source.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

NAUTILUS P4 -3 HANDLE

USER INSTRUCTIONS

Rinsing the Waste Tank "TANK FLUSH"

5. Fully open faucet at water supply source (40 psi minimum). Flush tank until water appears clear in 4" discharge hose.

6. Completely close faucet at the water supply source.
7. Disconnect garden hose from water source.
8. Disconnect garden hose from "**TANK FLUSH**" inlet

9. Close black waste holding tank valve.

NOTE:

To help ensure that debris does not clog tank sprayer orifices, use "TANK FLUSH" every time waste holding tank is emptied.

58471 Fir Road, Mishawaka, IN 46544
Phone: (574) 259-7838 Fax: (574) 259-7939
www.bandbmolders.com

Propane System

The propane system includes the propane cylinders, propane regulator, hoses, piping and copper tubing lines to each gas appliance. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for each propane appliance and all safety precautions.

Maintenance

Although both Grand Design RV and your selling dealer carefully test the propane system for leaks, travel vibrations can loosen fittings. Have the RV's propane system checked at all connections soon after your purchase. System should also be checked when the propane tanks are filled for the first time, and again after 5,000 miles of travel.

Continue propane system checks by a qualified propane service representative (*at least once per year*) as part of your normal RV maintenance.

Propane Gas

In your RV, propane or LP (liquefied petroleum) is used by the stove, furnace, hot water heater and refrigerator.

- An unpleasant "*sulfur or rotten egg*" odor is added to propane as a warning agent. This smell will alert you to an LP gas leak that can create a safety hazard.

When a propane cylinder is low, there may be a different odor *like onions or garlic*, that may be mistaken for a gas leak. This odor will usually disappear when the cylinder is filled.

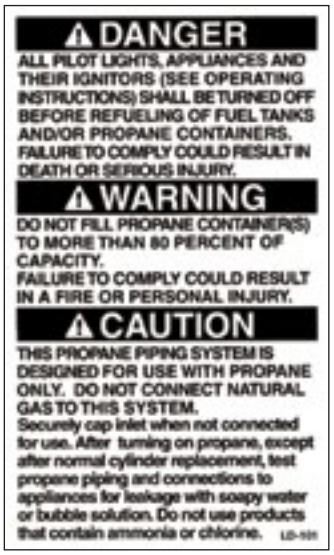
- *If the odor persists,* turn OFF the valve(s) and have the propane system inspected by your dealer or qualified propane service technician.

DANGER

IF YOU SMELL PROPANE GAS
STOP!

Quickly and carefully perform the 6-step procedure in the red box at the bottom of this page.

DO NOT remove the following label from your RV:


DANGER
ALL PILOT LIGHTS, APPLIANCES AND THEIR IGNITORS (SEE OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS) SHALL BE TURNED OFF BEFORE REFUELING OF FUEL TANKS AND/OR PROPANE CONTAINERS. FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.
WARNING
DO NOT FILL PROPANE CONTAINER(S) TO MORE THAN 80 PERCENT OF CAPACITY.
FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN A FIRE OR PERSONAL INJURY.
CAUTION
THIS PROPANE PIPING SYSTEM IS DESIGNED FOR USE WITH PROPANE ONLY. DO NOT CONNECT NATURAL GAS TO THIS SYSTEM.
Securely cap inlet when not connected for use. After turning on propane, except after normal cylinder replacement, test propane piping and connections to appliances for leakage with soapy water or bubble solution. Do not use products that contain ammonia or chlorine.

IF YOU SMELL PROPANE

1. **Extinguish any open flames, pilot lights and all smoking materials.**
2. **Do not touch electrical switches.**
3. **Shut off the propane supply at the container valve(s) or propane supply connection.**
4. **Open doors and other ventilating openings.**
5. **Leave the area until odor clears.**
6. **Have the propane system checked and leakage source corrected before using again.**

FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN EXPLOSION RESULTING IN DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY

⚠WARNING

The Propane cylinders SHOULD NOT be placed or stored inside RV. LP gas cylinders are equipped with safety devices that relieve pressure by discharging gas into the atmosphere.

Propane Gas Cylinders

While under pressure in the cylinder, propane gas is compressed into it's liquid form. Propane will not run through the appliances in its liquid state. As the fuel is released from the cylinder to operate an appliance, it changes from liquid to gas.

- **IMPORTANT:** Propane EXPANDS 1½ percent for every ten degree increase in temperature.
- **Sufficient space MUST be left inside container for expansion of gas during warmer weather.**

Propane cylinders (also referred to as LP bottles) are used for the storage and delivery of propane gas. Propane cylinders are filled by weight, expressed in pounds. For filling, a qualified propane facility is required, and cylinders must be removed from the RV.

When the propane system is not in use, the main shut off valve MUST be kept closed. To close the propane cylinder main shut off valve: **HAND TIGHTEN ONLY, *do not* use tools**. *Over-tightening may damage the interior seals on the cylinder valve seat.* If this type of damage occurs, the cylinder valve WILL NOT close properly.

DOT (Dept. of Transportation) Cylinders are the most common for use on RV trailers. DOT cylinders equipped with an OPD and ACME TYPE 1 service valve are identified by the triangular service valve knob.

- ALWAYS close the service valve and install a dust cap or plug when transporting or storing disconnected containers whether full or empty.

DOT cylinders are typically marked with "top" or an arrow indicating the correct orientation of the cylinder(s.)

- ALWAYS mount, store and transport the cylinder(s) in the position specified.
- ALWAYS securely re-install DOT cylinder(s) to the RV after they have been removed for filling or replacement.

The cylinders are equipped with an **Over-fill Protection Device** (OPD) designed to reduce the potential of overfilling. They are also equipped with an ACME service valve that is for connection of the TYPE 1 ACME pigtail hose assembly to the RV two-stage regulator. The TYPE 1 ACME pigtail hose assembly is a right-hand threaded, wrenchless connector that features a thermally sensitive sleeve and excess flow device.

Max output is 200,000 BTU/hr. It is used to connect propane cylinders to regulators, hoses and other fittings. It is not for use on gas grills and other low pressure devices.

Servicing or filling

Have the RV checked for leaks at the connections on the propane system soon after the purchase and the initial filling of each propane cylinder.

- **While the propane tanks are being filled, ONLY the qualified propane service technician should be near the RV. No one should be inside**.

When you have a new cylinder filled for the first time, make sure your propane supplier purges your new cylinder of trapped air. Otherwise, an improper mixture of gas and air will make it impossible to light your propane appliances. For best performance the new propane cylinder must be carefully purged before filling.

LP gas container overfill

NEVER allow your propane cylinder(s) to be filled beyond the maximum safe level marked on the cylinder. Your propane system is designed for gas vapor only. An overfilled cylinder could force *liquid* propane into the system, creating a hazardous condition.

Propane Leak Test

ALWAYS test for leaks with a solution of dish soap & water.

- Apply the solution with a spray bottle, to the outside of all gas line joints and fittings.
- If a leak is present, the soapy solution will bubble at the leak point.
- As a general rule, small bubbles indicate a small leak while large bubbles indicate a larger leak.

NEVER use a solution containing ammonia or chlorine when locating leaks.

- These products are corrosive to copper gas lines and brass fittings, which could result in deterioration of the copper and brass components.

If a leak is not fixed by tightening the connection, shut OFF the propane system valve(s) and immediately contact your dealer or a qualified propane service representative.

WARNING

BEFORE entering a propane or fuel service station make sure ALL pilot lights are extinguished.

- Shut OFF the gas to all appliances by CLOSING the Propane Gas Main Shut Off Valve.
- ALWAYS shut OFF any engine before refueling.
- DO NOT smoke, *and*
- DO NOT operate other ignition sources while refueling.

WARNING

If you suspect your propane container has been overfilled, contact your dealer or a qualified propane technician for assistance immediately.

DO NOT use or attempt to service an overfilled propane container yourself.

DANGER

Extinguish ALL flames.

NEVER use an open flame to check for leaks.

Failure to follow this warning could result in a fire or explosion resulting in serious injury or death.

WARNING

DO NOT check for leaks using products that contain ammonia or chlorine; these products can cause cracks to form on the metal tubing and brass fittings.

⚠WARNING

Test Propane Gas Alarm operation after the RV has been in storage, before each trip and at least once per week during use.

⚠WARNING

NEVER turn the 12-volt battery disconnect control to the OFF position and disconnect the battery cable to silence the alarm.

⚠WARNING

The pigtail hose MUST be installed to avoid tension or pulling stress at either end of the hose.

Keep the pigtail hose away from sharp edges of the cylinder collar, rigid corners, walls, doors or other compartment structures including the cover.

⚠WARNING

Ensure that all fasteners are secured before traveling.

Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Alarm

Your RV is equipped with a combination *Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Alarm*. Please read and follow the component manufacturer instructions supplied in your Owner Information Package.

*For detailed information on this alarm, See **page 26-30**, Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO)/Propane (LP) Alarm.*

Installing the Propane Cylinders

The position of the propane cylinder(s) and hoses is critical to proper operation and propane flow. FOLLOW these instructions to make sure your propane container(s) are connected properly.

1. CHECK that all the RV appliances are shut OFF.
2. CHECK that each LP cylinder *Shut-Off Valve* is CLOSED.
3. CONNECT the 3/8” low-pressure hose to the outlet of the two-stage regulator.
4. PLACE the *LP Cylinder* on the bracket in the recess compartment or housing and secure it so the outlets of the cylinder valve are facing the “sidewall” of the compartment or housing.
5. MOUNT the regulator on the center back wall of the compartment or housing so the vent is pointed downward.
6. ATTACH the 1/4” inverted flare x 18” Type-1 pigtail hose to the regulator inlet and the right hand swivel nut to the cylinder valve.
7. ATTACH the main supply hose from the regulator to the brass manifold fitting in the frame of the trailer. The swivel brass nut on the main hose will be your final attachment.

Remember each time the propane container is removed:

- CHECK that ALL fittings are tight.
- CHECK that ALL connections are tested with a *Propane Leak Detector* (or soapy water solution).
- OPEN the main shut-off valve on the LP cylinder ***very slowly***. This avoids *propane freeze up,* caused by a fast rush of propane to the excess flow valve.
- If you do experience a *propane freeze up,* CLOSE the main valve and wait at least fifteen (15) minutes before trying again. *For more information, refer to the regulator manufacturer’s operator manual.*

- LISTEN carefully. A *hissing* sound longer than one second, may indicate a propane leak. If you suspect that there is a leak, close the shut-off valve, *then* contact your dealer or qualified propane technician for repair assistance.
- REPLACE all protective covers and caps on the propane system after filling. Make sure the valve is closed. Install the LP bottle cover and use the bungee cord at the bottom to secure it in place for travel or storage purposes.

Propane Regulator

The two-stage regulator has the only moving components in the propane system. Its sole function is to reduce the pressure from the propane containers to a safe and consistent low operating pressure.

The first stage reduces the container pressure to 10-13 lbs. The second stage further reduces the 10-13 lbs. of pressure to an operating pressure of 11" W.C. (water column) or 6.35 oz. of outlet pressure to your appliances.

For optimum performance, the second stage will need to be adjusted by your dealer (or qualified propane service technician) using a properly calibrated manometer.

- If the pressure is **too high**, the safety and performance of the propane system will be affected.
- If the pressure is **too low**, the LP appliances will NOT operate correctly.

If your RV is equipped with the *automatic* two-stage regulator, with both cylinders full of propane, turn the lever on the regulator towards the cylinder you wish to use first. This will now be the *supply* cylinder and the other the *reserve.*

Slowly open both cylinder valves. The indicator on top of the regulator will change to ***green***. When the *supply* cylinder is empty, the indicator will change to ***red***. Now turn the regulator lever to the *reserve* cylinder side and the green signal should return. You may now remove the empty cylinder to have it refilled without interrupting the flow from the full bottle. After filling the cylinder, connect the pigtail hose and slowly open the bottle valve.

⚠WARNING

All propane connections should be checked periodically as vibrations from travel may cause them to loosen.

Failure to check connections could lead to a propane leak resulting in a fire or explosion that could cause serious injury or death

⚠WARNING

Propane regulators must always be installed with the regulator vent facing downward. Regulators that are not located in baggage compartments have been equipped with a protective cover.

Make sure the regulator vent faces downward and (if applicable) the cover is in place to minimize vent blockage that could result in excessive gas pressure causing fire or explosion.

LP Regulator: The red color on the top dial indicates the LP bottles are empty. If the LP bottles were full, the dial would show green.

Propane System Hoses, Tubes, Pipes & Fittings

The hoses, pipes, tubes and fittings used in your propane system are designed to withstand pressures exceeding those of the propane system. However, because environment and time can both contribute to the deterioration of these components, they must be inspected for wear at regular intervals. Be sure to inspect the hose before each season and when having the tank refilled. Look for signs of deterioration such as cracks or loss of flexibility. When replacing the hose or other propane components, always replace them with components of the same type and rating (check with your dealer).

Fittings are used to connect the various system components to each other. The P.O.L. fitting at the end of the propane supply hose is made of brass so that pipe sealants are not necessary to prevent leaking. It also has a left-handed thread, which means that it is turned *clockwise* to remove, and *counter-clockwise* to tighten. The P.O.L. fitting has been designed to help restrict the flow of LP gas in the event of a regulator failure or hose malfunction

Cooking with Propane

Unlike homes, the amount of oxygen supply is limited due to the size of the RV. Proper ventilation when using the cooking appliance(s) will help you avoid the danger of asphyxiation.

For additional safety instructions,
*See **page 161-164**, Appliances.*

Traveling with Propane

BEFORE towing your RV,

1. ALWAYS check that the propane bottles are properly fastened in place, *and*
2. TURN OFF the gas at the LP bottle.
   This disables all gas appliances and pilot lights.

DO NOT operate Propane System while the RV is in motion.

- Some states prohibit propane appliances to be operated during travel (especially in underground tunnels).
- Make sure to know the laws for the areas where you travel.

Using the Propane System

After the RV is completely set up and you are prepared for camping enjoyment, use the following steps for propane operation:

1. CLOSE ALL burner valves, controls and pilot light valves.
2. **OPEN the propane tank's main valve *VERY SLOWLY*.** This avoids a fast rush of propane vapor through the excess flow valve which can cause a *propane freeze-up.*
   - If a *propane freeze-up* occurs, CLOSE the main valve and wait 15 minutes before trying again.
3. LISTEN carefully as propane begins to flow.
   - If a hissing noise is heard for more than one or two seconds, CLOSE the main valve and contact your dealer to have your propane system tested.
4. LIGHT the appliances ONLY as directed in the appropriate manufacturer manual (found in your Owner Information Package).

BEFORE using the propane system, make sure that you read and understand ALL instructions and safety requirements. The Owner Information Package contains operator manuals for the various appliances hooked to your propane system.

If you have additional questions or concerns, Consult with your dealer and/or the specific manufacturer.

WARNING

DO NOT operate the gas appliances while your RV is in motion.

Unpredictable wind currents may be created, and cause flame reversal in the water heater burner tube, which could result in fire damage.

This could also activate the water heater's *Thermal Cut Off Fuse* and completely shut down the water heater until the thermal cut off fuse is replaced.

Calculating Propane Use

Your Momentum Fifth Wheel's furnace, refrigerator, water heater and range (if applicable) may all use propane to operate. Use the BTU rating of each appliance to determine how long your propane supply will last. Propane consumption depends on their individual use and the length of time operated.

Most RV gas appliances are operated intermittently. Unless there is heavy use of hot water, the water heater consumption of propane is minimal. During cool temperature or high wind conditions, furnace consumption can be extremely high.

To calculate your propane supply, take the BTU ratings for your propane appliances and divide that into the BTU availability. Each gallon of propane (3.86 liters) produces about 91,500 BTUs (46,514 kilojoules) of heat energy.

Average Propane Consumption

Appliance	Average BTU Consumption/Hr.	Kilojoules/Hr.
Water Heater	8,800	9,300
Refrigerator	640-1,200	700-1,300
Furnace	16,000 - 35,000	16,900 - 36,900
Range w/ Oven	7,100	7,500
Range - Rear Burner	6,500	6,900
Range - Front Burner	9,000	9,500

Appliances

BEFORE using your RV appliances:

Please read and understand the manufacturer owner manual for each specific component.

- **Follow all instructions, warnings, & safety alerts found in the manufacturer owner manuals when using the appliances in your RV.**
- **If you have any questions contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.**

These manuals are found in your Owner Information Package.

If there have been modifications or replacements made to your RV, then these instructions may not apply. Please contact the service center or technician who performed the modifications or substitutions if assistance is required.

Microwave

- Sufficient 120-volt power ***must*** be available BEFORE operating the microwave.
- To prevent damage, ALWAYS make sure that the microwave turntable is secured prior to traveling.

Refrigerator

An RV refrigerator is NOT intended for quick cooling or freezing. For best results, stock with food that is *already* cold or frozen.

- Arrange food items so that air can circulate freely.
- DO NOT cover the shelves with paper or plastic.
- Keep the area at the back of the refrigerator clean and free of debris.
- For optimum efficiency and performance, the refrigerator should be checked at least twice a year as part of routine maintenance.
- If equipped with an exterior *Refrigerator Vent*:
  - Check that it is free of any obstructions (*i.e., spider webs, bird nests, etc.*).
  - Use a soft cloth to dust off the debris.

⚠ DANGER

IF YOU SMELL PROPANE GAS
STOP!

Quickly and carefully perform the 6-step procedure below:

⚠ DANGER

DO NOT USE GAS COOKING APPLIANCES FOR COMFORT HEATING.

This may lead to carbon monoxide poisoning, which can lead to death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT use portable fuel burning equipment (i.e., wood and charcoal grills or stoves) inside the RV. Use of these items inside an RV may cause fires or inability to breathe.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT turn the gas range burner controls ON and allow propane gas to escape before lighting.

⚠WARNING

During and after use, DO NOT touch or let clothing or other flammable material come in contact with the top burners (or heating elements), burner grates or other areas near the top burners or oven until they have had sufficient time to cool. These areas can get hot enough to cause burns.

⚠WARNING

WHEN USING THE OUTDOOR COOKING AREA:

The vehicle **must** be level and stabilized.

DO NOT violate the manufacturer's instructions on required clearances for cooking appliances during use.

DO NOT store cooking appliances until cool to the touch. This can lead to a fire & explosion, and result in death or serious injury.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT cover the oven vent openings while the oven is in operation. Restricting the flow of combustion air will create an asphyxiation hazard.

Cooking with Propane

For additional safety instructions, *See* ***page 153-160,*** *Propane System.*

In Case Of A Grease Fire

Grease is flammable. Wipe any spills immediately.

NEVER allow grease to collect around the top burners or on the cook top surface.

If a fire does start, follow these basic safety rules:

1. Have everyone evacuate the RV immediately.
2. After everyone is clear and accounted for, check the fire to see if you can attempt to put it out. If it is large or the fire is fuel-fed, get clear of the RV and have the Fire Department handle the emergency.
3. Try to smother a flaming pan with a tight-fitting lid or cookie sheet.
4. Never pick up a flaming pan.
5. Flaming grease *outside* of the pan can be extinguished with baking soda or a multipurpose Dry Chemical or Foam-Type fire extinguisher.

Outdoor Grill / Cooktop (If So Equipped)

When using the Outdoor Grill / Cooktop:

- Watch the stove and food at all times.
- Keep small children away from the cooking area.
- Keep all flammable material away from the lit stove.

After use:

- **The *cooktop MUST* be cool to the touch, BEFORE storing in the closed/travel position**.

Oven

- **DO NOT use the oven as a storage area.**
- The propane gas oven ignites using a pilot light.

Range Hood

The range hood has a both a light and fan control switch on the front panel. The 8” x 8” aluminum mesh grease filter (located on the underside range hood) can be gently hand-washed using mild soap and water.

Range Hood/Microwave Exterior Vent with Locking Damper

IMPORTANT NOTE:

- **BEFORE using the *Exhaust Fan*, the exterior vent’s damper locks MUST be in the OPEN position.**
- **The damper locks are located outside of the RV, in the exterior vent, on each side of the damper.**
- **For travel and storage, please return the damper to the LOCKED position.**

⚠WARNING

NEVER leave cooking food unattended.

Turn pan handles inward, but not over the tops of the other range burners.

Ensure that pans used are large enough to contain the food and avoid boil-overs. Heavy splattering or spills left on the cook top can ignite and cause burns.

⚠WARNING

If using glass, ceramic, earthenware or other glazed utensils (or cookware) verify that it is safe for use on the top burners.

Only certain types of utensils (or cookware) are suitable for surface or top burner use.

Range Top

To prevent damage, ALWAYS use the manufacturer recommended size flat bottom pan(s). Properly matching pan size to burner size will improve efficiency. The pan should be large enough to cover the range top burner, but not be more than one inch larger than the burner grate.

- Using *undersized* pans could expose a portion of the heating element to direct contact. ***This may result in the ignition of clothing***.

DO NOT use large pots & pans, broiler pans, griddles, etc., that cover more than one range top burner at a time. This will create excessive heat that may cause melting, sooting or discoloration.

The Central Vacuum Hose Inlet & Toe Kick are located inside the RV, by the front stairs on most floorplans.

Before vacuuming, check that the dust bag and motor filter are properly installed in the power unit.

Central Vacuum

The vacuum canister is located in the forward pass-through storage compartment or the front compartment. To access and change the vacuum dust bag, depress the button on the cover to remove it. Be sure the new vacuum dust bag is attached correctly before reattaching the cover.

- BEFORE you run the central vacuum, CHECK that your RV has sufficient power.
- To operate, ATTACH the vacuum hose, *then* OPEN the toe kick to turn ON the vacuum.

New vacuum dust bags can be ordered through your dealer, and direct from InterVac™ on their website **intervacdesign**.com *or call toll-free* (888) 499-1925.

Central Vacuum Motor & Canister

Washer/Dryer Prep

If your RV was built with this feature, be aware the cabinet space provided is ONLY intended for the installation of an aftermarket RV-rated washer/dryer (customer supplied).

Please consult your dealer or the appliance manufacturer for installation assistance.

Hot & Cold Water Washer Hookups are typically located in the front bedroom or in the rear garage area.

Electronics

Audio/Visual System Guide

The following is a basic overview of the audio/visual (A/V) electronics operation. The information in this section is written for original factory-installed equipment usage. Refer to the manufacturer's user guides included in your Owner Information Package for detailed operating instructions for each specific component, or visit that manufacturer's website.

If there have been modifications or replacements made to your RV, then these instructions may not apply. Please contact the service center or technician who performed the modifications or substitutions if assistance is required.

Radio operation:

1. Turn ON the radio.
2. Select speaker output using the controls on the radio face (radio sound does not run through the sound bar).

CD operation

1. Turn ON the radio.
2. Select speaker output using the controls on the radio face (radio sound does not run through the sound bar).
3. Insert CD to play.

TV operation

1. Turn ON the TV power supply.
2. Turn ON the TV and select your signal input using the "source" button.
3. Adjust the TV Antenna/Channel Tuning as needed.
   - *See **page 167,** TV Roof Antenna.*
4. Turn ON the sound bar (the TV speakers are not used, nor does TV sound run through the radio speakers).

DVD operation

1. Turn OFF the TV power supply.
2. Turn ON the TV.
3. Turn ON the sound bar (the TV speakers are not used, nor does TV sound run through the radio speakers).
4. Insert DVD to play.

⚠ CAUTION

The TV power supply should be turned OFF when connecting and/or disconnecting the cables to the power supply and antenna, but should be turned ON when testing for voltage.

TV Reception Basics

TV broadcasting is a point-to-point communication. Any obstructions between the transmitter and the antenna will degrade the signal, affecting picture quality.

- Television stations transmit their broadcast signal "over the air" to surrounding areas.
- TV antennas are designed to receive the broadcast signals.
- Picture quality depends on the antenna type and your distance from the transmitter.
- The further you are from the transmitter, the weaker the signal becomes, affecting picture quality.

TV Signal Booster

- **The TV Signal Booster must be turned ON for improved *antenna* reception.**
- The TV Signal Booster sends 12-volt DC power to the TV roof antenna. This voltage energizes the transistors in the antenna head amplifier.
- Turn OFF the *TV Signal Booster* to view cable/satellite TV, or to use a DVD/Blu-ray player or Game System.

Cable/Satellite Outlet

Both Cable and Satellite connection outlets are found in the outside utility center.

- The *Cable* input connects to an RG6 cable run through in-line splitters to provide service at multiple locations.
- The *Satellite* inputs connect to RG6 cables run directly to specific locations (no splitters). This allows for clean transfer of HD signals from the satellite dish.

Please refer to the (customer supplied) satellite manufacturer manual for setup, care and maintenance instructions.

TV Roof Antenna

To watch local TV stations, turn ON power to *both the TV and the TV Roof Antenna*. For a list of all DTV signals available at your location, go to:

https://www.**fcc.gov/media/engineering/dtvmaps**

Antenna Power Supply (Wall Plate)

Winegard AIR 360 Operation

- You ***must*** run a *Channel Scan* on your TV in order to receive maximum programming.
- Ensure the antenna power supply (wall plate) is in the "ON" position and the indicator LED is illuminated.
- A new scan will find any new channels that have been added in your area as well as finding any channels that have changed or moved since the last scan.

While the steps to perform a channel scan may vary between televisions or compatible devices, below are some general guidelines to follow.

How to Run a Channel Scan using the television remote:

1. SELECT "Menu" *then* select "Settings."
2. SELECT "Channel Setup."
3. SELECT "Antenna" or "Air," depending on your TV. Make sure you are not on "Cable."
4. SELECT "Channel Search" or "Channel Scan."
   - The steps to perform a channel scan may vary.
   - If the wording on your TV differs from the options shown, refer to your TV user manual for help.
   - **Running a *Channel Scan* is NOT the same as pressing Channel UP/DOWN on your remote.**
5. To keep your saved channels up-to-date, it is recommended to run a *Channel Scan*:
   - Once per Month
   - When a channel is lost, *and*
   - When you change locations.

Travlfi Wi-Fi Router

BEFORE using your Travlfi Journey XTR Router:

Please read and understand the full Travlfi manufacturer's User manual. **To download an electronic copy, scan the *QR Code***, *left, with your tablet or smartphone.*

- ***Follow all instructions, warnings, & safety alerts.***

Travlfi Router

The Travlfi Router allows you to easily connect to the Internet.

- A *Travlfi Journey XTR* ***Quick Start Guide*** is included in your Owner Information Package.
- View plans at: **travlfi.com/plans**
- ***Please contact your Grand Design RV Dealer for more information and Ordering.***

Back-Up Camera Prep. Rear Mount Bracket

Back-Up Camera Prep
(Cameras are Customer Supplied)

Your Momentum FW is pre-wired and prepped for an optional Furrion® *Vision S* Back-Up Camera. When used as an observation system, this product is intended to assist in safe driving and to allow the driver to have a broader view.

- ***Please contact your Grand Design RV Dealer for more information and ordering.***

Back-Up Camera

Side Camera with Marker Light

Heating & Cooling

The following section contains an overview of the original factory-installed heating and cooling components. **For more information on each specific component, please refer to the manufacturer's operating instructions found in your Owner Information Package.**

If there have been modifications or replacements made to your RV, then these instructions may not apply. Please contact the service center or technician who performed the modifications or substitutions if assistance is required.

Ducting & Return Air

All heat discharges, return air grills and registers MUST remain free and clear of any obstructions. The adjustable registers are ONLY intended to *REDUCE* airflow as needed.

- **Registers SHOULD NOT be completely CLOSED.**

Air Conditioner

Your thermostat controls the roof-mounted air conditioning system equipped on your RV. ***BEFORE operating the air conditioner: ALWAYS check that you have sufficient power available.***

Cooling vs. heat gain

Under the best conditions, the roof air conditioner(s) can ONLY cool the temperature of outside air by 20° F. During hot weather your RV will absorb heat throughout the day, increasing the inside temperature. This is referred to as ***heat gain***.

To keep the inside temperature comfortable, reducing the RV's heat gain is just as important as the cooling ability of your air conditioner. ***To reduce heat gain, follow these steps:***

1. Park the RV in a shaded area.
2. CLOSE the window shades, blinds or drapes.
3. Use the awnings to shade your RV from sun exposure.
4. AVOID the use of heat producing appliances.
5. SET the air conditioner *Fan/Cooling mode* to HIGH.
    - During high humidity or high temperatures, this will provide maximum efficiency.
6. Turn ON the air conditioner early in the morning, to give it a head start on cooling.

NOTICE

DO NOT operate the air conditioner without the Return Air Filter.

Operation without the filter allows lint and dirt normally stopped by the filter to accumulate on the air conditioner's cooling coil.

This will lead to a loss of air volume, possible equipment damage and an expensive cleaning process.

Air Conditioner, Continued

Air conditioner gasket

The air conditioner is subjected to wind pressures along with motor vibration during normal operation. A *Foam Gasket* forms a weatherproof seal between the roof material and the sub-frame of the air conditioner.

- INSPECT the gasket seal (at least) annually.
- CHECK for leaks and RE-TIGHTEN the mounting bolts if needed.
  - To prevent damage to the gasket - use care;
  - DO NOT *over-tighten* the bolts.

The air conditioner gasket will eventually wear out and need replacement. To gain access to the bolts, remove the filtered panel cover on central air systems or the entire air box on non-central air conditioners.

Heat pump

A heat pump is one base unit that can operate in two modes, heating or cooling. The travel or flow of the refrigerant is reversed depending on which cycle you choose to operate:

- **Cooling Mode:** Heat is removed from the *inside* air and released to the *outside* air.
- **Heating Mode:** Heat is removed from the *outside* air and released to the *inside* air.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT operate the furnace when the slide rooms are retracted in the closed position.

⚠WARNING

The furnace should be inspected periodically (*monthly* during the heating season) for the presence of soot on the vent.

Soot is formed whenever combustion is incomplete. This is a visual warning that the furnace is operating in an unsafe manner.

If soot is observed on the vent, IMMEDIATELY shut the furnace OFF and contact a qualified service agency. Operating the furnace under this condition could lead to serious property damage, personal injury or loss of life.

⚠WARNING

To ensure your personal safety, DO NOT obstruct or alter the furnace in any manner. DO NOT install screens over the vent for any reason. Screens will become restricted and cause unsafe furnace operation. For your safety, only OEM factory authorized parts are to be used on your furnace.

Fireplace

Refer to the manufacturer owner's manual for operation, service and maintenance information.

If you have further questions, please contact your dealer.

Furnace

The RV furnace installed in the RV is controlled by a thermostat. The furnace requires both 12-volt power and propane gas for full operation. Make sure you have sufficient power available before operating your furnace.

- ALWAYS have your furnace maintenance completed by a qualified technician (at least once a year, more often depending on furnace use).
- NEVER attempt to repair the furnace yourself.

If you have any questions, Contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

Digital Thermostat (If So Equipped)

Please read and understand the thermostat manufacturer's ***Installation, Operation & Application Guide*** found in your *Owner Information Package.*

The OneControl® Touch Panel if so equipped, controls your HVAC. See ***page 58****.*

HVAC Mode and Fan Mode Selection

- Upon power up, the display will show the HVAC Mode set to ***Off***, the Fan Mode set to ***Off***, the current temperature, temperature units, and the sensor in use.
- To SET the HVAC Mode, PRESS the knob. The display will now show the HVAC Mode section with the currently selected mode *blinking*.
- ROTATE the knob to scroll through the options.
  - When the desired setting is *blinking*, PRESS the knob to accept.
- If ***Off, Cool,*** or ***Cool+Heat Mode*** was selected, the **Fan Mode** will illuminate with the currently selected mode *blinking*.
- ROTATE the knob to scroll through the options.
  - When the desired setting is *blinking*, PRESS the knob to accept.
- The display will show **HVAC Mode** and State (if applicable), the current temperature, temperature units, the sensor in use, the set point temperature (when in an HVAC mode other than ***Off***), and the Fan Mode and State (if applicable).
- Once the thermostat returns to this screen, it will check to see if any outputs need to be enabled or disabled and performs those actions.

A Digital Thermostat if so equipped, is wall-mounted inside your RV

Set point Adjustment

- To select a *Set Point*, the thermostat ***must*** be in any HVAC Mode other than ***Off***.
- Once an HVAC mode has been selected and the set point temperature is visible, ROTATE the knob.
- The display will now *blink* the set point temperature and adjust it according to the rotation direction (***clockwise for INCREASE*** and ***counter-clockwise for DECREASE*** of the set point).
  - When the desired set point is displayed, PRESS the knob.
- The display will revert to the previously displayed information with the new set point. Once the thermostat returns to this screen, it will check to see if any outputs need to be changed and perform those actions.

NOTICE

DO NOT leave a roof vent open when the RV is stored or unattended for long periods. High winds, other unusual conditions or obstructions may occur; and if so, the resulting leakage could cause non-warrantable damage.

Roof Vents

The roof vents allow fresh air to circulate through your RV. They may be electric (12-volt DC) and/or manual. Make sure that all roof vents are CLOSED while traveling, and when you will be away from the RV, to prevent unexpected weather damage.

Power Roof Vent

The roof vents allow fresh air to circulate through your RV. They may be electric (12-volt DC) and/or manual. Make sure that roof vents are closed while traveling, and when you will be away from the RV, to prevent unexpected weather damage.

MaxxFan Roof Vent

All MaxxFan keypad commands answer with an audible beep:

- **Press FAN ON** - Vent automatically lifts open and fan starts running at the last selected speed.
- **Press FAN OFF** - Vent closes and shuts off the fan motor.
- **Press FAN ON** (with the fan running) - Cycles through the 4 fan speeds. Fan is Exhaust Only.
- **Vent OPEN button** - Opens the vent without running the fan motor.
- **Vent CLOSE button** - Closes the vent, if the fan motor is running it will continue to run and enter Ceiling Fan mode.

Slideout Awnings

A slideout awning (also called a *topper*) will automatically open and close along with the slide-room. When fully extended, the topper is level (which may cause water to pool on top of the canopy). As the slide-room is closed, the topper rolls up causing any water to spill over the sides of the awning.

To avoid damage to the awning and/or slide-room:

- ALWAYS check that your slideout awning is entirely free of debris (leaves, twigs, etc.) BEFORE retracting the slideout.

This page is intentionally blank.

The Patio Awning Switch is located inside the RV, on the Command Center

⚠WARNING

PINCH HAZARD.

Keep CLEAR of arm assemblies while closing awning. Arm assemblies will fold/close against back channel. Failure to obey this warning could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

This manual provides operational procedures for Solera® Power Awning. Operating the Solera® Power Awning in any other manner than described may result in personal injury, damage to the recreational vehicle or the awning assembly as well as voiding the Lippert Components Limited Warranty.

⚠ CAUTION

During incidents of heavy rain, high wind, or extended time away from the unit, it is advisable to **retract the awning completely** to prevent damage to the awning and the RV.

Patio Awning

To operate the door-side Patio Awning:

- Locate the Awning switch (Fig. 3) on the Command Center.
- PRESS and HOLD Patio Awning switch until the awning is in the desired position, *then* RELEASE the switch.
- RETRACT the awning into the *Travel Position* when you will be away from the RV for an extended period of time, *and* during windy or stormy weather conditions, or
- Select "*Awning*" on the *Compass Connect® System, See* ***page 70*** *Grand Design Compass Connect® App*

System Information

The Solera® Power Awning features an internal motor to steadily operate the awning. Additionally, the friction joint allows for rain dump and adjustable pitch features, and there is no rafter arm to lock in place. The friction joint also provides added stability. Locate the Awning switch on the Command Center.

NOTE: Some coaches may not use the LCI switch (Fig. 3).

EXTENDING the Awning

1. Verify the RV battery is fully charged and connected to the electrical system.

NOTE: ***The latch shown in Fig.1 & Fig.2 is OPTIONAL.***
It may or may not be installed on one or both support arms.

2. Locate the locking latch (Fig. 1), if equipped, and unlock the latch (Fig. 2).
3. Press and hold EXTEND (3A) until the awning is extended completely.

NOTE: Extension is considered complete when the fabric is completely unrolled, the valance seam is visible and a section of the roll tube is exposed (Fig. 4).

NOTE: The awning fabric should always be above the roll tube. However, if the extend switch is engaged too long or extend is hit inadvertently instead of retract, the awning will roll up backward. *This is not a defect*. To correct the fabric orientation, press the RETRACT button. The awning will then extend to its correct orientation and normal operation can resume.

RETRACTING the Awning

1. Verify the coach battery is fully charged and connected to the electrical system.

NOTE: The awning can be retracted without resetting the pitch.

2. Press and hold RETRACT (Fig. 3B) until the awning is retracted completely.
3. Locate the locking latch (Fig. 2), if equipped, and lock the latch (Fig. 1).

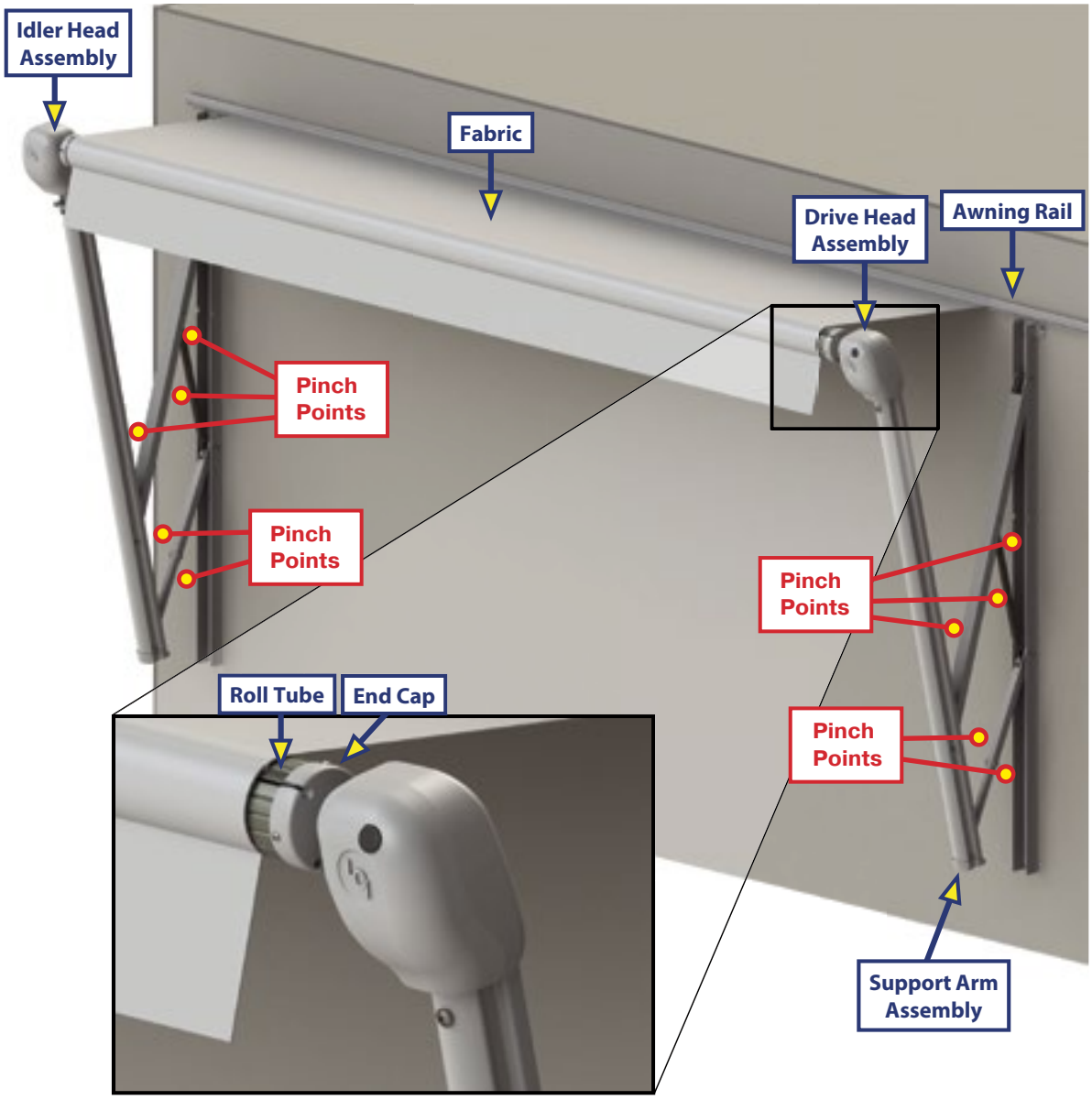
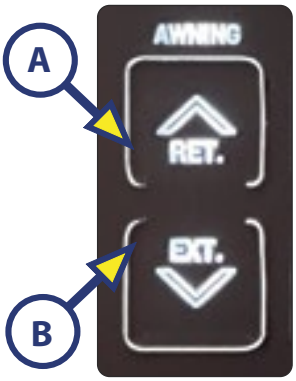


Fig. 1

Fig. 2

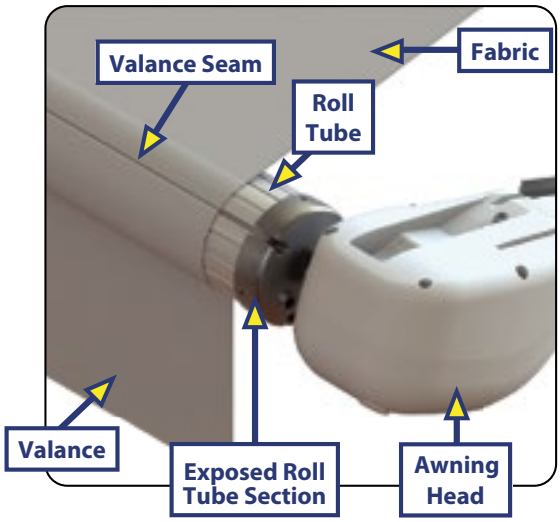
*These latches are **optional**. They may not be installed on one or both support arms.*

Fig. 3



The Patio Awning Switch is located inside the RV, on the Command Center.

Fig. 4 - Complete Extension



Patio Awning, Continued

CAUTION

During incidents of heavy rain, high wind, or extended time away from the unit, it is advisable to **retract the awning completely** to prevent damage to the awning and the RV.

CAUTION

Tying down the roll tube once the awning is extended will not allow the free-floating support arms to work as designed and may cause damage to the awning or RV.

Adjusting Pitch - All Solera Awnings

NOTE: The awning will pitch itself to purge the pooling of excess water and may dump a significant amount of water without notice

1. Pitch can be set by adjusting the articulating arm to tip to one side of the awning to allow water runoff.
2. Extend the awning to desired position.
3. Choose the side of the awning for optimum shade or convenient water runoff.
4. Pull downward on the joint of the articulating arm until desired pitch is set (Fig. 5) to allow for water runoff.
   - Do not push the joints of the articulating arms up.
   - This will put tension on the gas strut, which can cause the strut to break.
   - Belleville washers and bolt (Fig. 6A) allow the joint to remain in the position set by the operator.

NOTE: The awning can be retracted without resetting the pitch.

NOTE: If the articulating arm does not hold position, it can be tightened by adjusting the bolt (Fig. 6A) in the center of the articulating arm.

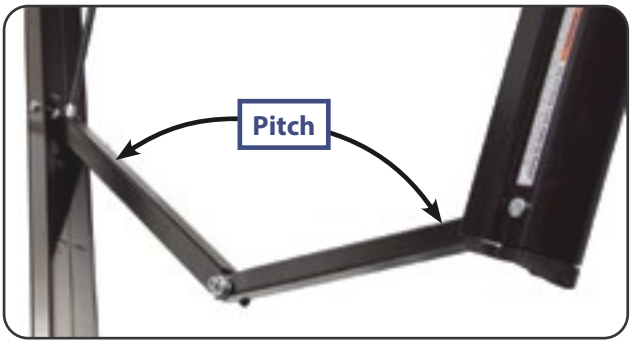


Fig. 5

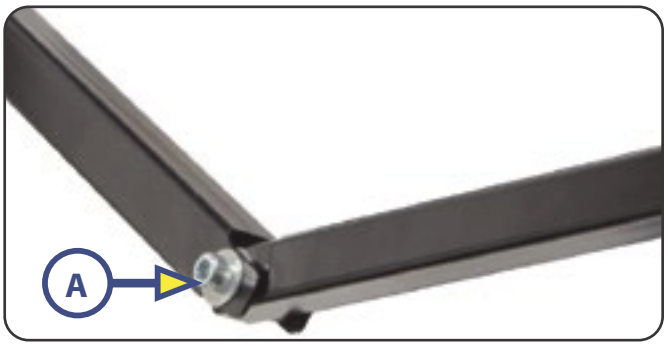


Fig. 6

Maintenance - All Solera Awnings

Fabric Care

If the awning is rolled up while wet, roll it out and let it dry as soon as conditions allow before rolling it up again. This will help prevent the formation of mildew and add greatly to the life of the awning. Mildew does not form on the fabric itself, but on the accumulated dust, dirt and grime.

- Periodically clean vinyl or woven acrylic fabric using a mixture of ¼ cup of dish soap and 5 gallons of warm water.

- Liberally slosh the mixture on the top of the fabric and roll up the awning for 5 minutes.
- This will apply the mixture to the bottom of the fabric as well.
- Roll the awning back out and hose off with fresh water.
- Repeat if necessary. Allow to dry before rolling up.

Troubleshooting

Manual Override

In the event of power loss or motor failure, the awning can be extended and retracted manually. Perform the following procedure to manually retract the awning.

NOTE: This procedure may also be performed to extend or retract the awning in the event of dry camping or camping without a battery.

1. Remove the rubber grommet (Fig. 7A) from the drive head assembly, exposing the manual override nut on the motor.

NOTE: The drive head assembly is always located on the right side of the awning as it is viewed from outside of the coach.

2. Using a **7/16**" socket and cordless/power drill, spin the manual override nut counterclockwise to retract the awning (Fig. 8).

NOTE: A ratchet may also be used to turn the manual override nut. Using a ratchet will take a significant amount of time and should only be used if no cordless/power drill is available.

NOTE: Use caution when retracting the awning manually. The use of a step stool or ladder may be required to completely retract the awning.

3. When the awning is completely retracted, remove socket or drive device and replace the rubber grommet in the drive head assembly.

NOTE: The motor's internal drive system prevents the awning from moving (extend or retract) on its own.

For more information, please refer to the awning manufacturer's user manual.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT attempt any repairs to any awning. The awning roll tube is under extreme spring tension. Repairs should only be performed by an authorized dealer and/or repair center.

Fig. 7

Fig. 8

Slideout Systems

⚠WARNING

The slideout room and mechanism are a potential crush hazard. Disconnect the auxiliary battery to disable power to the slideout(s) before working on or under them. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Stand clear of the room's interior path and verify there are no exterior obstructions before extending or retracting the slide-out. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The slideout mechanism has hard, sharp metal edges. Do not allow children to play under a slideout in the extended position. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Ensure the slideout is in the closed position prior to hooking the RV to the tow vehicle. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or death.

Slideout rooms are designed to provide you additional living space during stationary camping.

BEFORE operating your slideout system:

- Check that you have sufficient power available.
- Level *and* Stabilize the RV

- LEVELING helps to keep the RV square, so the slideouts extend, retract and seal correctly.
- If the RV is NOT level, the slideout rooms and/or mechanisms may become damaged.
- The slideout rooms DO NOT need additional support.

  Non-warranty damage can occur from improper use of aftermarket support jacks.

Slideout Operation

To operate the slideouts select "*Slides*" on the *OneControl® System. See* ***page 58.***

It is normal for the slide rooms to make *creaking* or *squeaking* noises while moving. These noises are especially common during the break-in period while the components are seating properly. This will decrease after a few extend/retract cycles. Note that there will always be some noticeable noises when operating the slideout.

1. **ALWAYS level and stabilize the RV, BEFORE operating your slideout system**.
2. CHECK that your *auxiliary battery* is fully charged or the RV is connected to shore power.

To maximize available power, turn OFF all unnecessary lights.

3. CLOSE all cabinet doors and drawers.
4. BEFORE **extending** or **retracting** the slideout room:
   - CHECK that the *interior* path of the slideout room is clear of people, pets, furniture, clothing, etc.
   - CHECK that the *exterior* path of the slideout room is free from any obstructions.

5. INSPECT the sides, top and bottom of the extended slideout room. If the outside of the slideout room is wet, wipe it dry before retracting.
6. CLEAN any water puddles or debris brought inside your RV from slideout operation immediately.
7. PRESS and HOLD the appropriate slide room switch to either IN or OUT, until the room is completely extended or retracted.

The Slide Room controls are found on the OneControl® System.

- DO NOT continue to ***TOUCH*** the slide room control past the point the room is fully extended/retracted or damage may occur.
- For the weather seals to be effective, the slideout room MUST be *completely* extended/retracted.
- BEFORE operating your RV's slideout systems it is important to review all safety alerts.

NOTICE

INSPECT both sides of the slideout room for interior or exterior obstructions prior to operating.

NOTICE

Ensure that the RV is level before operating the slideout room.

Water leaks and other problems could result if the slideout is operated without leveling the RV.

NOTICE

For long-term storage, it is recommended that the slide rooms be closed (retracted).

NOTICE

Never 'jump' or charge the auxiliary battery from the power connections on the InWall Controller. Always do this at the auxiliary battery.

Slideout maintenance

While the slideout room is *extended*, the outside surfaces of the room and mechanism may collect dirt and debris. The slide-out seals are not designed to remove the debris or any water that may accumulate.

- When you **retract** the slideout, any debris on the *outside* of the room, is brought *inside* your RV.

BEFORE retracting the slideout(s):

- INSPECT the outside surfaces for snow, ice, dirt, dust, insect nests, etc.
- CHECK for standing water on the slideout topper awning (if so equipped).
- CLEAN and DRY the outside surfaces of the room and mechanism as much as possible.

Contact your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service for troubleshooting and/or repair *if your slideout system*:

- Stalls out before reaching end of stroke, *or*
- Does NOT close and seal tightly.

⚠ CAUTION

Always disconnect battery from the system prior to manually operating system.

Failure to disconnect battery can cause electricity to back feed through the motor and cause serious damage to the system as well as void the warranty.

NOTICE

Use EXTREME CAUTION if using the manual override feature to extend and/or retract the room.

It is possible to extend or retract the slideout beyond the maximum open or closed positions. This can result in damage to the slide components, slide room structure or trim components.

Lippert Electric Through Frame Slideout System (Equipped on G-Class)

Extending and retracting the slideout room is powered by the Lippert Through Frame Electric Slideout System. It is a rack and pinion guide system with a motor driven ball screw actuator. The actuator is equipped with an automatic clutching system. The Lippert Electric Slideout System is designed to operate as a negative ground system.

Manual operation

The Lippert Through Frame Electric Slideout System comes with a manual override. Locate the 1” round Slideout Override Access Hole in the skirt metal on the opposite side (of the RV) from the room that you are trying to move.

- **Disconnect your RV battery**.
- Insert the crank handle extension.
- Turn ***clockwise*** to retract the slideout room.
- Turn ***counter-clockwise*** to extend the slideout room.

*If using the **manual override** feature* :

Use EXTREME CAUTION to extend and/or retract the room. It is possible to extend or retract the slideout beyond the *maximum* OPEN or CLOSED positions.

This can result in damage to the slide components, slide room structure, or trim components.

IMPORTANT: The actuator is *manual ready*.

- DO NOT disengage the motor.
- Just hook up and crank.

Slideout Override Access Hole & Crank Handle Extension

Maintenance

Although the system is designed to be almost maintenance free, actuate the room once or twice a month to keep the seals and internal moving parts lubricated. Check for any visible signs or external damage before and after movement of the RV.

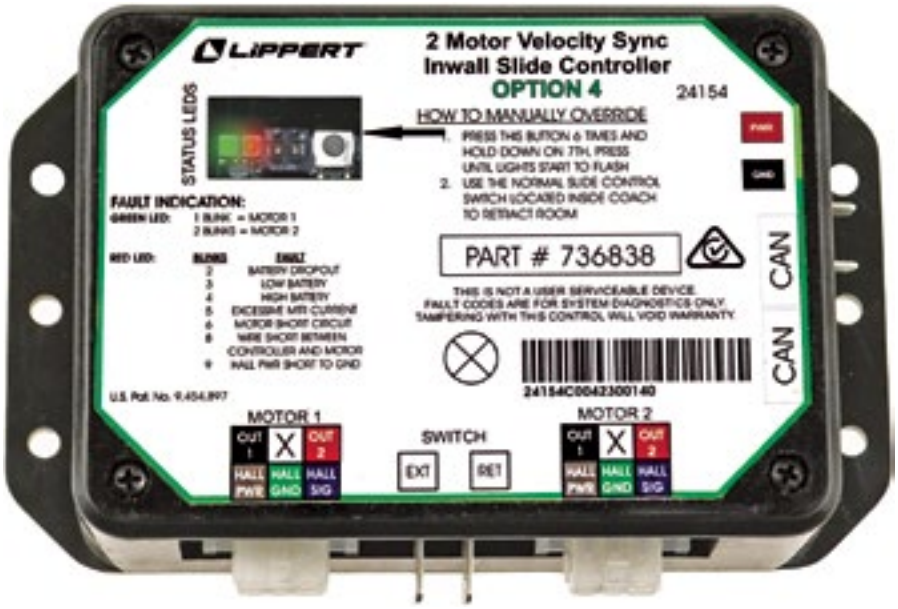
- For the best performance, the slideout system requires the auxiliary battery be fully charged.
- Check for corrosion, and loose or damaged terminals/ connections at the battery, the control switch, and the electronic actuator motor.
- Check that the motor leads under the RV chassis are in good condition. These connections are subject to damage from road debris.
- When operating the Lippert electric slideout system in harsh environments (i.e., road salt, ice buildup, etc.) keep all moving parts clean, washing them as needed, with mild soap and water.
- Grease or lubrication is NOT necessary. It could even harm the long-term dependability of the slideout system.

Service and adjustments

- Slideout room adjustments should be performed ANNUALLY by a certified RV service technician.
- Any adjustments made by non-certified persons may void any and all warranty claims.

Schwintek In-Wall Slideout System

If the bedroom Schwintek In-Wall slideout does not extend or retract, follow these steps to override the system (it will be easier if you have one or more persons to assist you).



Electronic manual override
(*for board revision C1 and newer*)

1. The Schwintek circuit board for each slideout is located in the Front Compartment.
2. PRESS the *MODE* button six (6) times quickly, *then* PRESS a seventh (7th) time and HOLD for approximately five (5) seconds.
3. The RED and GREEN LED lights will begin to flash, confirming the override mode.
4. Release the *MODE* button.
5. Back inside the RV, PRESS and HOLD the *Slide Room 2* switch IN until the room retracts completely.

⚠ WARNING

Before working underneath the RV, both the front and rear axles should be supported with jack stands. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

During this override procedure, the Schwintek slide room motors are not synchronized.

Visually watch the slide room, and if one side is moving significantly slower than the other (or not at all), immediately stop and call your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

Manually push the slide room in override

1. LOCATE the circuit board.
2. UNPLUG both motors from circuit board.
   (this will release the motor brake)
3. PUSH or PULL slide room in as desired;
   - Larger rooms may require several people to push.
   - Keep both sides of room relatively even.
4. *When the bedroom slide is completely in*,
   PLUG both the motors back into the control board
   (this applies the motor brake for road travel).

Disengage motors, manually retract room and travel lock:

1. LOCATE and REMOVE motor retention screw located near the top of each vertical column (on the outside behind the bulb seal).
2. BEND BACK the wipe seal and visually locate motor.
3. PULL the motor up until disengaged, about 1/2”.
   - Replace the motor retention screw to hold the motor in this position.
4. REPEAT this process for both sides of the slide room.
5. PUSH or PULL the slide room back into the opening, keeping the side of the slide room relatively even.
6. RE-ENGAGE motor to be ready for travel.
7. The room ***must*** be travel locked to keep room in place for road travel.

Troubleshooting the Schwintek Slideout System

Error codes

During operation, when an error occurs the board will use the LED's to indicate where the problem exists.

- For motor specific faults, the GREEN LED will ***blink once*** for motor 1, and ***blink twice*** for motor 2.
- For error codes, the RED LED will ***blink*** between two and nine (2-9) times to indicate the error code (see below)

Red LED Error Code	Error Code Description
2	Battery drop out; battery capacity low enough to drop below 6 volts while running.
3	Low battery; voltage below 8 volts at start of cycle.
4	High battery; voltage greater than 18 volts.
5	Excessive motor current; high amperage, also indicated by one (1) side of slide continually stalling.
6	Motor short circuit; motor or wiring to motor has shorted out.
8	Hall signal not present; encoder is not providing a signal, usually a wiring problem.
9	Hall power short to ground; power to encoder has been shorted to ground, usually a wiring problem.

When an error code is present, the board needs to be reset. Energizing the extend/retract switch resets the board. Energize the extend/retract switch again for normal operation.

Checking Fuses

The Schwintek slide system requires a minimum of 30-amp fuse. Check the fuse box (located in the command center) for blown fuses, and replace as necessary. If the fuse blows immediately upon replacement there may be a problem with the wiring to the control box (contact your dealer for assistance).

Low Voltage

The Schwintek slide controller is capable of operating the bedroom slide room with as little as 8-volts. But at these lower voltages the amperage requirement is greater. Check the voltage at the controller; if the voltage is lower than 11-volts, it is recommended that the auxiliary battery be placed on a charger until it is fully charged.

NOTICE

Never *jump* or charge the auxiliary battery from the power connections on the In-Wall Controller.

ALWAYS do this at the *Auxiliary Battery.*

Only one (1) side moving

The Schwintek slide system has a separate motor to operate each side of the room. If only one side of the room moves a short distance (2 to 4 inches) and stops;

- **Will non-moving side move with help?**
  If only one (1) side of the room is moving, with someone's assistance, push the non-moving side in the appropriate direction while pressing the switch to extend or retract the room. On larger rooms it may be necessary to have two (2) or more people pushing the room.

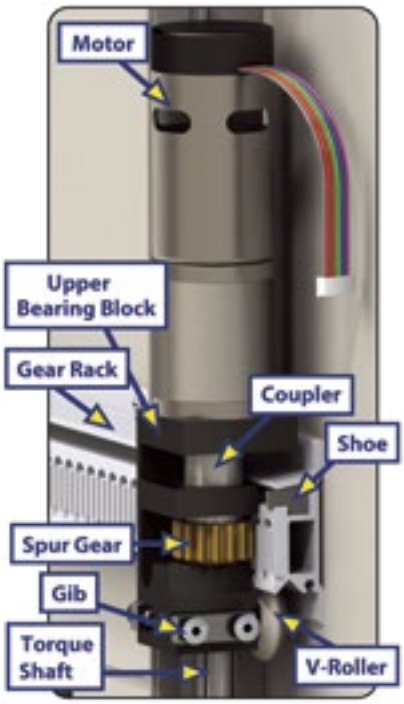
- **Non-moving side moved manually.**
  Try to push the non-moving side in and out. If a motor shaft has broken then it will be possible to move that side of the room several inches by hand. Larger rooms may require several people to push.

Schwintek slide system maintenance

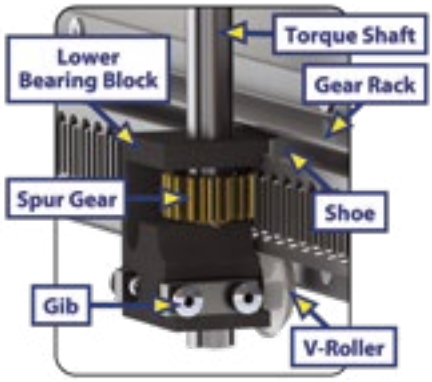
- Check all four (4) gear racks installed on the exterior sidewalls of the slide room for debris (if found, remove any debris immediately).

The slideout system is designed to be <u>maintenance-free</u>.

- **If needed, lubricate ONLY the Upper and Lower Gib, Bearing Block, Coupler, and V-Roller on each side of the slide with *CRC Power Lube with PTFE* (in the green can).** *See the diagrams, Right.*



Upper Gear Rack Detail



Lower Gear Rack Detail

Synchronizing the Slideout Motors

Periodically your Schwintek Slide System should be *Re-Synchronized*. To do so follow the simple procedure bellow:

1. Run the room OUT 10"- 12" and STOP.
2. Run rooms back IN *and* HOLD switch down until the motors limit out.
3. Repeat steps *1 & 2.* Five to Six times, *then*
4. Run the room OUT *all the way* until the motors limit out.
5. Run rooms back IN 10"- 12" and STOP.
6. Repeat steps *4 & 5.* Five to Six times

This process will *Synchronize* the motors so they are timed correctly.

Furniture

Converting the Tri-Fold Sofa to a Bed (If So Equipped)

1. Remove the seat back cushions.

2. Lift up and out on the front edge of the sofa, uncovering the legs.
3. Fully extend the legs on both sides.

4. Pull the sofa forward and place the legs flat on the floor.
5. Pull the sofa back forward, and lay flat.

Sofa Converted to Bed.

Fuel Station

A *Fuel Station* is standard equipment on your Momentum FW. Most models have two separate (gasoline only) tanks. One tank supples the pump/nozzle and one tank supples the generator. Some models supply both systems with a single fuel tank.

BEFORE OPERATING: ***Please read, and follow all safety information in the Fuel Station section of this manual. Failure to comply could result in death or serious injury.***

If you need further assistance, consult with your dealer or Grand Design RV Customer Service.

⚠WARNING

There is a potential for exhaust fumes to filter back into your RV, If a tow vehicle or generator engine is running nearby.

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the RV is a properly maintained ventilation system and an active carbon monoxide detector. To allow for proper operation of the ventilation system, keep the ventilation inlet grill(s) clear of snow, leaves or other obstructions.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT replace the fuel filler cap with one of a different type. If replacing the fuel cap(s) is required, it must be replaced with a cap designed specifically for this application. Failure to do so may result in improper vent pressure and/or vacuum leading to serious fuel system and other damage.

Working with fuel can be dangerous. Serious injury or death could result from improper handling of the generator, fuel station and fuel.

Exhaust Fumes

Avoid inhaling any exhaust gases. They contain carbon monoxide, which is a potentially toxic gas that is colorless and odorless. *See **page 25**, Carbon Monoxide (CO).*

- ALWAYS shut OFF the engine while refueling your vehicle or generator.
- DO NOT run any combustion engine in confined areas, such as a closed garage, or any longer than needed to move in or out of your RV's garage.
- If a vehicle or generator engine is running nearby, RV windows should be closed to avoid drawing dangerous exhaust gases into the RV.
- If you suspect that exhaust fumes are entering the RV, determine the cause and remedy as soon as possible.

Fuel Filler Cap

OPEN the *Fuel Filler Cap* SLOWLY: If the fuel filler cap is opened too quickly, fuel can spray out on you. This is more likely to happen in hot weather and/or if your tank is nearly full.

- **To OPEN:** Remove the fuel filler cap by slowly turning it counterclockwise and waiting for any "hiss" noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.
- **To CLOSE:** Securely turn the cap clockwise until you hear clicking sounds. If you need to replace the fuel tank filler cap, use only a cap specified for your RV.

The Fuel Station is Located on the Exterior Off-Door Side

To Fill the Fuel Tanks:

- The *LEFT* fuel filler cap is the GENERATOR fuel tank, (Nearest to the *FRONT* of the RV)
- The *RIGHT* fuel filler cap is the PUMP fuel tank. (Nearest the *REAR* of the RV)
- **The fuel tanks are made for *Unleaded Gas* ONLY.**
  - ALWAYS use clean, fresh unleaded gasoline.
  - Gas blends cannot contain more than 15% Ethanol. The fuel tank(s) are not compatible with other fuel blends or diesel fuel.

BEFORE filling the fuel station tank(s):

- Level your RV from *side-to-side* and *front-to-back*.
- When the gas station pump shuts off, STOP fueling.
  - DO NOT *over-fill*
  - DO NOT *top-off* the fuel tank(s).
- Overfilling the tank(s) may result in fuel leakage and damage to the fuel station components.
- BE CAREFUL not to contaminate fuel with debris while the filler cap is removed.
- Replace the filler cap *immediately* when finished fueling.

⚠ DANGER

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if mis-used or mis-handled. If you have further questions consult your dealer or GDRV Customer Service for assistance.

- While refueling, ALWAYS SHUT OFF the engine of the vehicle or equipment.
- DO NOT store or bring fuel or other flammable liquids inside the RV because a fire or explosion may result.
- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames BEFORE refueling.
- DO NOT overfill the fuel tank(s). The pressure in an overfilled fuel tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and/or fire.
- Fuel spills represent a serious fire hazard and should be cleaned up immediately.
- NEVER restart an engine or re-light any pilot lights while raw fuel is present.
- The fuel tanks are specifically made for unleaded gasoline. ALWAYS use clean, fresh unleaded fuel NOT containing a blend of more than 15% ethanol.

FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN FIRE, DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY.

Analog Fuel Gauge

DANGER

NO SMOKING

- Before dispensing fuel, turn off all engines, fuel burning appliances, & their igniters. (See operating instructions)
- DO NOT dispense fuel within 20 ft (6.1 m) of an ignition source.
- Can cause ignition of flammable vapors, which can lead to a fire or explosion and result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

ALWAYS use care when fueling. Clean any spills immediately.

Gasoline can dull or soften paint and damage other surfaces.

Fuel Gauge

An analog fuel gauge is located with the *Command Center* inside your RV. A digital fuel gauge is located in the *Outside Fuel Station* on the *Control Panel.* Both indicate the amount of gasoline in the fuel tank. *See the photos, left and on Next Page*.

- **ALWAYS check that the tank has fuel BEFORE operating the fuel pump.**

To Dispense Fuel

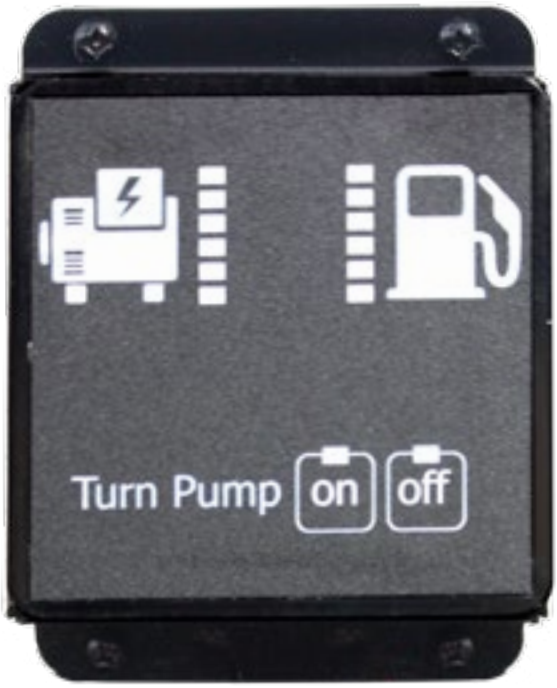
- **ALWAYS turn OFF the Fuel Pump Switch in the event of an Emergency or spill.**
- **ALWAYS turn OFF the Fuel Pump Switch when the fuel station is not in use.**

Follow these steps:

1. Locate the fuel station control panel, dispensing hose and nozzle on the exterior of your RV / trailer:
   - After being **INACTIVE**, the control panel will be in **Sleep/Locked Mode**
   - Lights on the control panel are not lit up (sleep mode).
   - ON/OFF buttons are not functional.
2. **WAKE** control panel, press “ON” or “OFF” button.
   - Control panel will display fuel level(s).
   - RV’s equipped with two tanks will display both fuel station and generator tank levels.
3. **UNLOCK** control panel, hold “OFF” button down until “ON” button begins to **blink**.
4. Press “ON” button to activate pump, dispense fuel.
   - Use Hose and Nozzle to dispense fuel.
5. When finished refueling, press “OFF” button.
   - Pump will automatically go into reverse mode for 10 seconds to return any fuel remaining in the dispensing hose and nozzle to the tank.
6. Control panel will revert to **Sleep/Locked Mode** after 2 minutes of inactivity.

Fuel Station Control Panel

Single Tank



Duel Tank

Garage

Zero-G™ Ramp Door and Keyed Power Latch Instructions

The Zero-G Ramp Door serves as the trailer's rear-most entry/exit point for persons and equipment. The weight of the ramp door is offset via a tensioned cabling system that runs through the door frame and attaches to each side of the ramp, allowing the door to be lowered and raised with relative ease

To Open:

1. **LEVEL and STABILIZE your RV.**
2. **Check that the area outside and around the ramp door is CLEAR OF OBSTRUCTIONS and SAFE TO OPERATE.**
3. **12 VOLT POWER (BAT. or SHORE) MUST BE AVAILABLE.**
   - **IF NOT, SEE MANUAL OVERRIDE (NEXT PAGE).**
4. INSERT the ramp door key into the lock located on right side of the ramp door frame.
5. *TURN the key clockwise from the 12 o'clock position to the 3 o'clock position.*

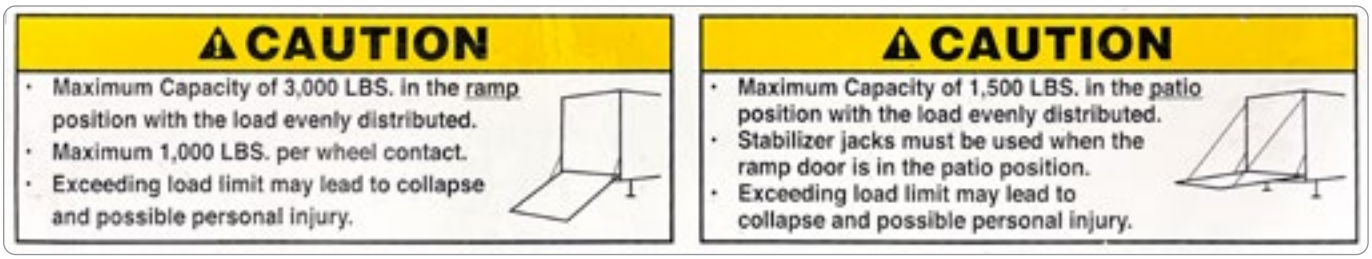
IMPORTANT NOTE:

DO NOT hold the key in the 3 o'clock position longer than 3-5 seconds as this may damage the actuator motor;

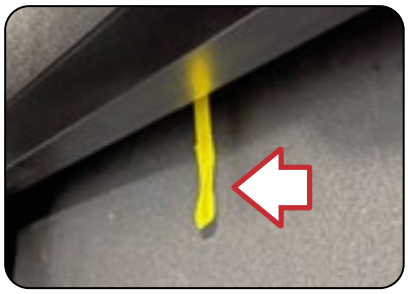
- ***If the latches do NOT unlock and release quickly, RETURN the key to the 12 o'clock position and try again.***

6. Once the door releases, turn the key back to the 12 o'clock position.
7. Grasp the handle located on the side of the ramp door and guide it down to the desired (patio or ramp) position. *For the RAMP position, REMOVE pins & DISCONNECT the cables from door on both sides.*

Familiarize yourself with any/all weight and point loading specs/ restrictions. Weight and point loading information is located on high visibility sticker on the road (left) side of ramp deck. (shown below)



To Open with *Manual Override*:



1. Inside your RV's garage, LOCATE the ***yellow strap*** hanging from the top/center of the ramp door frame.
   - PULL strap down firmly until both latches release.

or LOCATE the two (2) rubber dust covers on each side at the top of the door frame labeled *"Manual Override"*.

- REMOVE both dust covers and locate the now exposed tab (lever) inside each hole.
- PULL the tab firmly in a downward motion until the latch releases. Repeat on the other side.

2. Once latches release, EXIT your RV and grasp the handle located on the side of the ramp door and guide the ramp door into the desired (patio or ramp) position.

*Scan the **QR Code**, above, with the camera of your tablet or smartphone for an instructional video on proper use of the Patio Railing* System.

To Close:

1. CHECK that any potential obstructions in/near the doorway have been moved clear and properly stowed so as not to interfere with the door properly closing.
   - *When closing from the Patio Position, first CLOSE and SECURE the patio railing assembly.*
2. **BEFORE closing the ramp door, OPEN the side entry door of the garage. *This will release the air pressure created as the ramp door closes.***
3. Raise the door up far enough to grab the handle, LIFT the door and forcefully PUSH CLOSED.

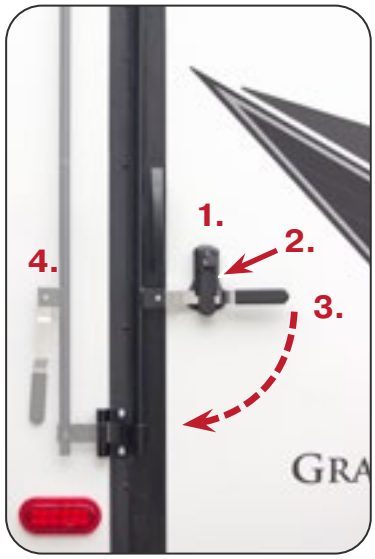
   or STAND toward the middle with both hands on the outside of the door and briskly walk the door forward then forcefully PUSH CLOSED.

4. Similar to a car door, the Zero-G Ramp Door has two closed positions; one is loosely closed but not sealed and the other is closed and sealed.
   - PULL THE HANDLE. If the ramp door moves at all, RE-OPEN the door and SLAM SHUT to ensure that the ramp door is closed to the sealed position.

NOTE: *The Door Latching Pins are SELF-ADJUSTING, DO NOT attempt to manually adjust in any way.*

Manual Ramp Door (If So Equipped)

- **Please use CAUTION at all times the rear loading ramp/door area of your RV is in use.**



The *Rear Ramp Door* is easily operated by one person to give full access to the garage.

1. UNLOCK
2. PRESS the Handle Release directly below the lock.
3. PUSH FORWARD & PULL DOWN on the handle to unlatch each side of the rear door. See photo, Left.
4. SWING the handles and locking bars all the way to the outside of the RV until Ramp Door is clear.

The two-sided ***Lift-Assist*** (*If so equipped*) holds the door in any position and allows it to move up or down with only the slightest pressure. UNLOCK & UNLATCH by lifting and turning the handles on each side of rear door. *See photos below.*

- ALWAYS check that the area behind the RV is clear before unlocking and lowering the ramp door.
- The patio deck cables must be detached from the ramp door to utilize ramp. *See* ***page 202,*** *#1.*
- When lowered, the ramp allows you to easily load small vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, and rolling cargo.
- Use the *Tie Down Points* located in the garage floor to secure all vehicles or cargo items so they cannot come loose, unfastened, opened or released while the RV is in motion.

⚠ DANGER

Vehicles and equipment powered by internal combustion engines and placed in RVs may cause carbon monoxide poisoning or asphyxiation, which could result in death or serious injury.

The flammable liquids used to power these items can cause a fire or explosion, which can result in death or serious injury.

To reduce risk:

1. DO NOT start & idle the vehicle in the storage area.
2. DO NOT sleep in the vehicle storage area when vehicles are present.
3. Close doors separating the living area and garage when any vehicle is present.
4. DO NOT store, transport or dispense fuel inside of the RV.
5. Open the air ventilation systems provided for venting while transporting vehicles.
6. DO NOT operate propane appliances, pilot lights or electrical equipment when motorized vehicles are present.

Patio Deck (If So Equipped)

Your unit may be equipped with a patio deck complete with folding rails. Caution should be taken not to exceed the ramp door weight capacities when in either the ramp position or the patio deck position, and to maintain even weight distribution.

FOLLOW the correct Patio Rail System instructions for how your unit is equipped (MORryde or Lippert) found at the end of this section.

FOLLOW all instructions and safety labels while using your Momentum FW's Ramp Door / Patio Deck.

⚠WARNING

Maximum Capacity is based on an evenly distributed load in the patio position.

- Failure to observe the weight limit or use other than intended may result in personal injury.

⚠ CAUTION

When returning the ramp door to the stowed position, be sure all safety pins used to secure the rails during transit are in place and secured in place with the safety clip.

Failure to do so could result in damage to the rail and ramp door.

⚠WARNING

Secure vehicles and cargo as far *forward* as possible.

- Excess weight in the rear of this RV can result in loss of stability.
- Consult the RV owner's manual for loading and weighing procedures.
- **DO NOT** exceed the RV's GVWR (total weight rating) or GAWR (axle weight rating). Move vehicles and/or cargo to maintain proper balance.

⚠ WARNING

- **Patio has a Maximum Capacity of 10 persons or 1,500 lbs maximum. The total weight of the patio MUST remain within the 1,500 lb. limit.**
- **Stabilizer jacks MUST be used when the ramp door is in the patio position.**
- **Support jacks on the patio door must be used where applicable.**
- **Exceeding load limit may lead to collapse and possible personal injury.**

⚠ CAUTION

- Maximum Capacity is 3,000 lbs in the ramp position with the load evenly distributed.
- Maximum 1,000 lbs per wheel contact.
- Exceeding load limit may lead to collapse and possible personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

- **Failure to follow these instructions may result in death, serious injury or property damage.**
- **ALWAYS secure the ramp door in either the closed, ramp or party deck position.**
- **NEVER use the ramp door while anything is obstructing operation.**
- **Keep hands away from all openings,rollers and cables when operating the ramp door.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **Failure to follow these instructions may result in serious injury or property damage.**
- **Read the instructions before installation or operation.**
- **NEVER force the ramp door in any direction.**
- **ALWAYS make sure the cables are pulling out straight, staying in the grooved portion of the rollers and not coming in contact with any obstruction.**
- **DO NOT operate the ramp door if the cable is frayed or damaged.**

Retractable Screen Wall (If So Equipped)

To avoid possible injury and/or damage to the Screen Wall, ALWAYS ***fully EXTEND*** and ***fasten*** the floor snaps when in use, and ***fully RETRACT*** when NOT in use.

- CHECK that all obstacles are removed from the path of the *Screen Wall*.
- LOCATE the *strap* attached to the *Screen Wall's Pull Bar.*
- PULL DOWN first by the strap, *then* by the *Pull Bar* until the *Screen Wall* is completely extended.

To store the Screen Wall:

- PULL UP on the *Pull Bar Handle* to release it from the grabber catch, *then* PUSH UP the screen wall until it is fully retracted.

Power Beds (If So Equipped)

HappiJac Power Bed

The HappiJac© power bed lift system supports the two beds which can be raised up and out the way while storing or hauling ATV's or other equipment, and lowered again for use when needed.

WARNING

RAISE THE REAR BED TO THE HIGHEST POSITION WHEN TOWING YOUR RV. Damage to the rear bed may result from traveling with the bed in the lowered position.

WARNING

DO NOT LOAD MORE THAN 600 LBS. ON THE BED. Damage to the bed lift mechanism and personal injury may result from overloading.

Operating precautions:

- NEVER operate the bed(s) when person(s) *or* any items other than bedding are on the bed platform.
- NEVER travel with any items other than bedding on the beds. Loose items can become projectiles.
- ALWAYS check that the locking pins are securely fastened at all four corners of the bed platform BEFORE using the bed(s) or towing the RV.
- ALWAYS raise the bed(s) to the full *UP* position BEFORE the RV is towed to avoid damaging the bed(s) as a result of bouncing.
- ALWAYS check that the areas above, below and adjacent to the bed(s) are free from obstructions BEFORE operating the bed(s).
- ALWAYS check that bedding does not over-hang the ends of the beds where it could become entrapped BEFORE operating bed(s).
- ALWAYS exercise care when loading cargo/vehicles in the bed area to avoid damage to the bed mechanism.
- ALWAYS properly secure loads in the bed area to avoid damage to the bed mechanism.

To lower the top bunk

1. To lower the top bunk, press the *BED UP* switch on the Garage Command Center.

***NOTE*:** *To prevent damage to the underside of the upper bunk, ALWAYS check that there is nothing other than bedding on the lower bunk BEFORE operating bed(s).*

2. The lower bunk will rise up to the underside of the upper bunk and lift the upper bunk off the four (4) travel pins.
3. After the upper bunk is lifted off the pins, PULL each of the four (4) pins and store.
4. PRESS the *BED DOWN* switch to lower both the upper & lower bunks. The upper bunk will stop in a preset position.
5. Continue to lower the bottom bunk to the desired position.
6. Reverse this process for raising the bunks for garage clearance and/or travel.

- **FOR TRAVEL:** *ALWAYS pin the **upper bunks** in the highest position. The **lower bunks** should be low to the deck floor.*

Removable Sit & Sleep Sofa

- To change the bottom bed into the sofa position the bed must fully lowered.
- Grasp the center section of the bed and pull it upwards towards you. Push the sofa back towards the outside walls of the cargo area.
- To return it to the bed position, pull the sofa back forward, *then* push it back down into the bed position.
- To remove the lower seat bench, remove the front two clevis pins under the sofa bench and carefully pull the seat bench towards you (store the seat benches where they will not be damaged).

Power Rear Awning (If So Equipped)

The *Power Rear Awning* switch is located on the garage command center.

- *RETRACT* the awning to the travel position during windy or stormy weather conditions, or if you will be away from the RV for an extended period of time.
- Maintaining your awning in good condition can prevent costly repairs. It is very important to keep the awning clean, *See **page 176**, Fabric Care.*

For more information, please refer to the awning manufacturer's user manual.

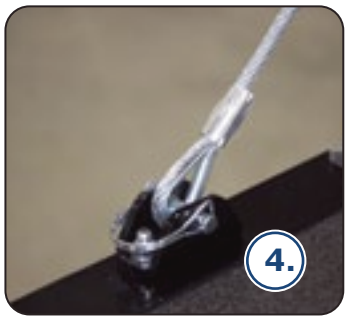
Garage Command Center

WARNING

The retractable rear awning must be fully closed and locked securely while the RV is in transit.

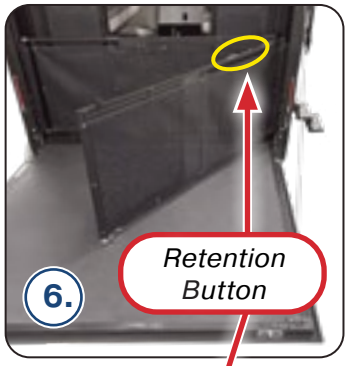
Patio Railing System, MORryde
User Instructions (If So Equipped)

The Telescoping Patio Railing System is used in conjunction with a patio-capable ramp door. When properly installed and employed, the patio provides the end user a means to transform their ramp door into an enclosed deck.



Operation - Patio Railing Set Up:

1. **LEVEL and STABILIZE your RV.**
2. **Check that the area outside and around the ramp door is CLEAR OF OBSTRUCTIONS and SAFE TO OPERATE.**
3. OPEN the ramp door.
4. CHECK that the patio cables are securely attached on each side and lower the ramp door into the patio position.
5. RELEASE the plastic buckle and Velcro straps used to secure the patio railings together in the closed position.
6. SWING the *Door Side* patio railing 90 degrees into the OPEN position.

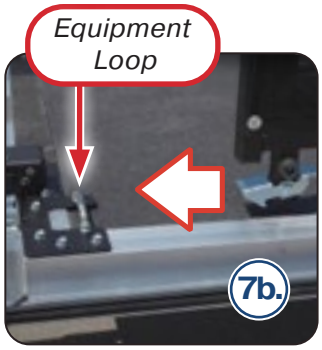


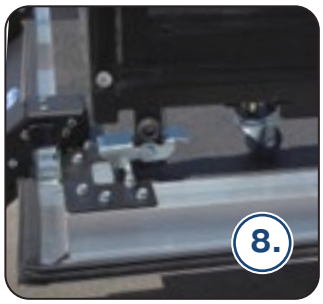
7a. PRESS IN the retention button located on the top rail of the patio.

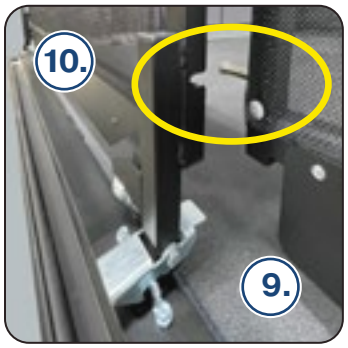
7b. PULL/SLIDE the telescoping railing OUT to the equipment loop at the end of the deck.

8. LATCH the bottom of section onto the equipment loop.

* ***REPEAT steps 6-8 for the Off-Door-Side patio railing.***







9. SWING the *Off-Door Side* End Section/Gate 90 degrees
   - LATCH the end section onto the *Center* equipment loop.
10. SWING the *Door Side* of End Section/Gate 90 degrees
   - MAKE SURE the pin nests into the *Off-Door Side* post.
11. SLIDE the C-channel on top to CLOSE/secure or OPEN/unsecure patio outside entrance gate.

Fold & Store Patio Railing:

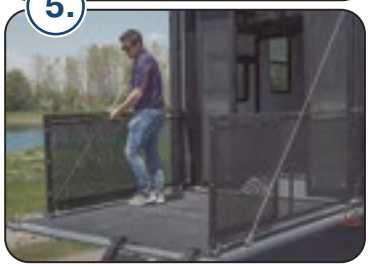
1. SLIDE OPEN the C channel.
2. SWING the *Door Side* end (gate) section allowing it to NEST into the *Door Side* patio panel.
3. RELEASE the *Off-Door Side* end (gate) section toe latch from the *Center* equipment loop, *then*

*Scan the **QR Code**, above, with the camera of your tablet or smartphone for an instructional video on proper use of the Patio Railing* System.

4. SWING the the *Off-Door Side* end (gate) section allowing it to NEST into the *Off-Door Side* patio panel.
5. RELEASE the *Off-Door Side* patio panel toe latch from the equipment loop, *then*
   - SLIDE the *Off-Door Side* patio panel back toward the RV until the retention button clicks.
   - SWING the Off-Door Side panel 90 degrees into the stowed position.

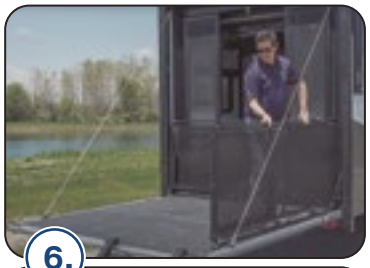
***Note:** To get the retention button to fully engage and click out, it may help to lift the end of the panel/section while sliding.*

6. RELEASE the *Door Side* patio panel toe latch from the equipment loop, *then*
   - SLIDE the *Door Side* patio panel back toward the RV until the retention button clicks.
   - SWING the *Door Side* panel 90 degrees into the stowed position.
7. SECURE both side panels together with two (2) provided Velcro straps and strap with plastic buckle.



Load & Unload Equipment/Toys

1. **Check that the area outside and around the ramp door is CLEAR OF OBSTRUCTIONS and SAFE TO OPERATE.**
2. OPEN the ramp door to the Ramp position.
3. SWING OUT both side patio panels until they are clear of equipment/toys entering or exiting the RV garage.

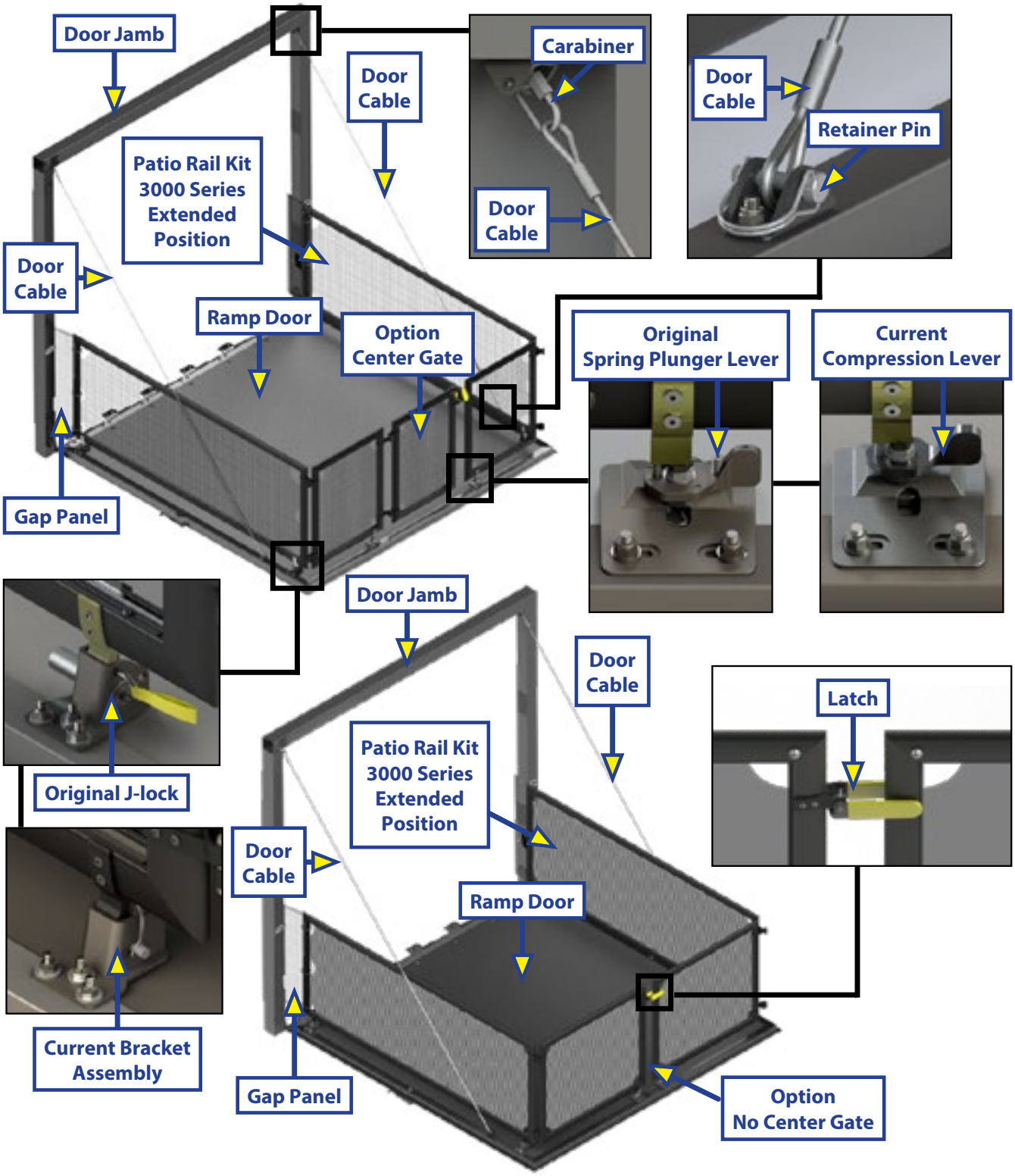


***Note:** To prevent unintended disassembly - Prior to swinging the patio side panels clear of the ramp door, check and ensure that the retention buttons on both side panels are locked and clicked out.*

Patio Railing System, Lippert (If So Equipped)

PATIO RAIL KIT 3000 SERIES ASSEMBLY

DOORS



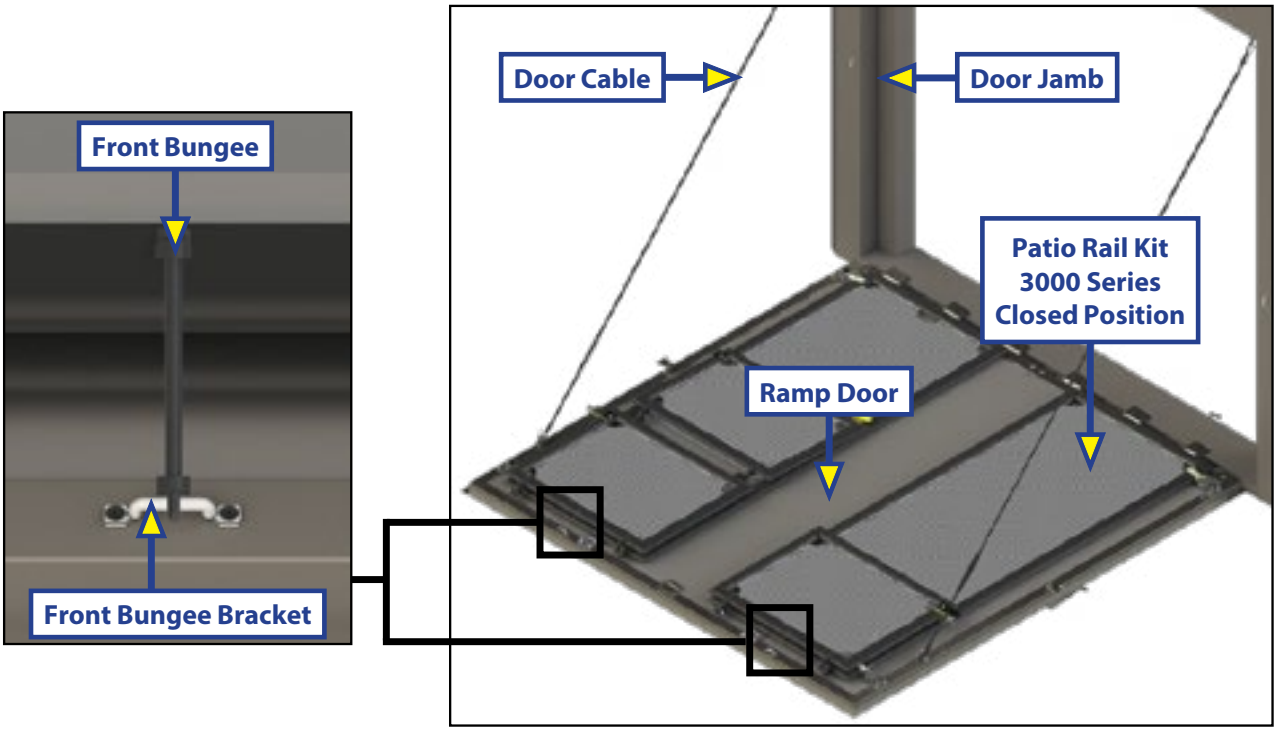
Rev. 07.15.21

Web: - https://support.lci1.com/documentation/ - Ph: (574) 537-8900 - Email: customerservice@lci1.com

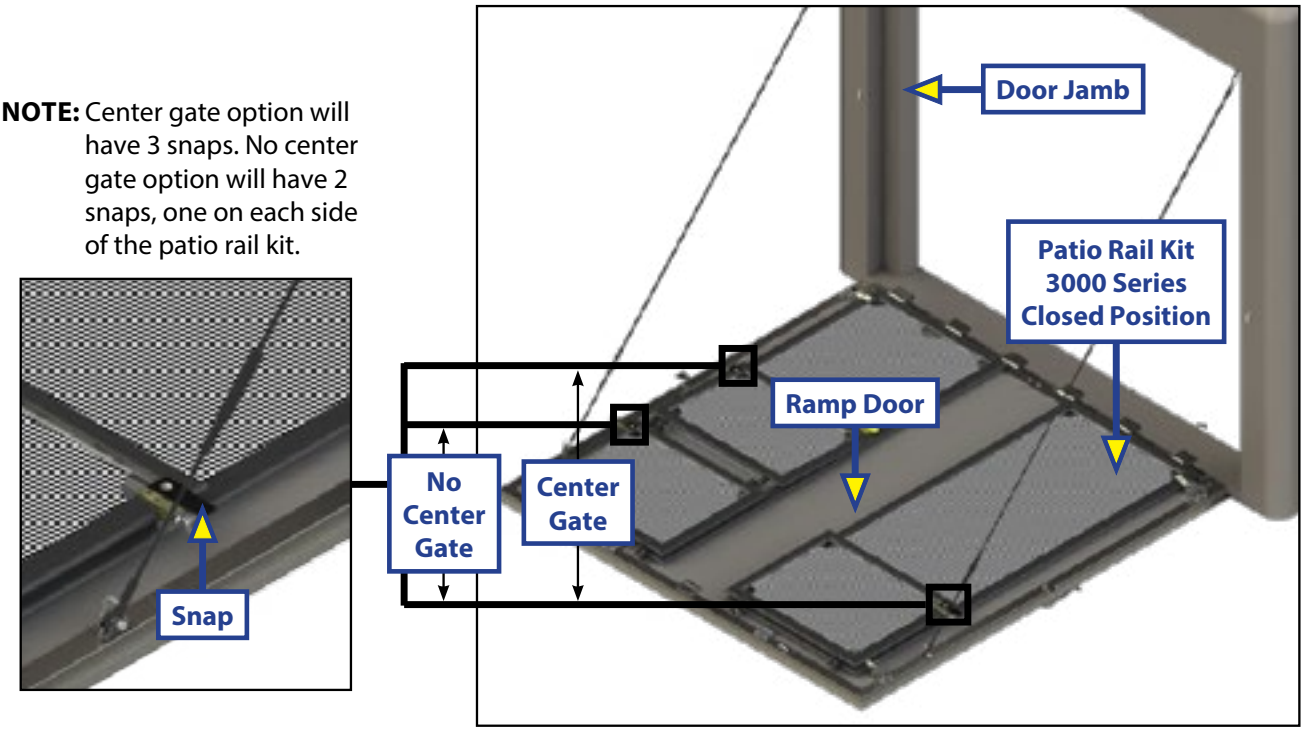
CCD-0004096

PATIO RAIL KIT 3000 SERIES ASSEMBLY

DOORS

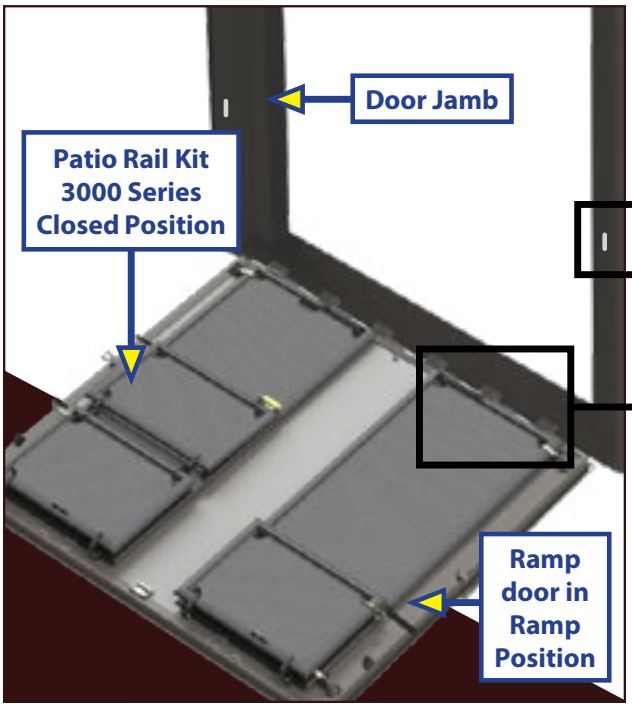


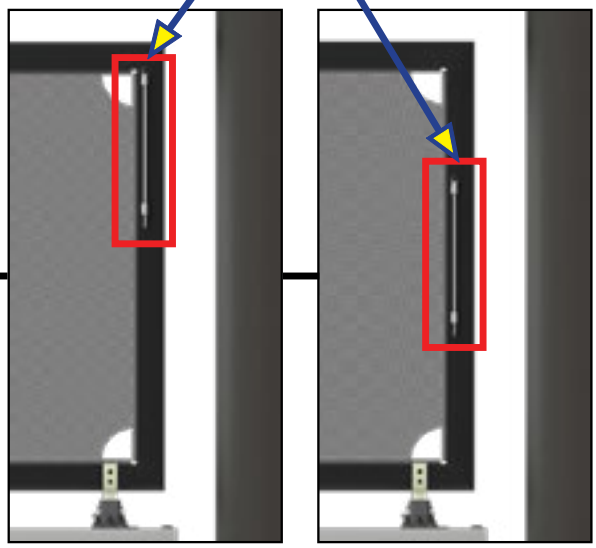
NOTE: Center gate option will have 3 snaps. No center gate option will have 2 snaps, one on each side of the patio rail kit.

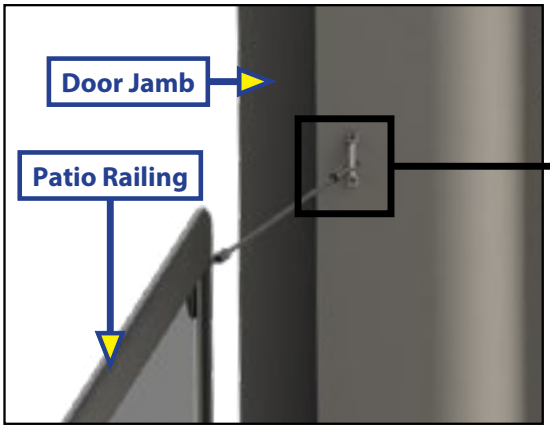


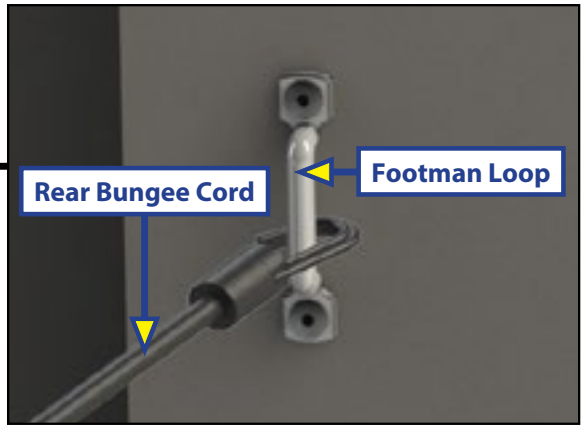
PATIO RAIL KIT 3000 SERIES ASSEMBLY

DOORS









Interior Care

Cleaning the Interior

To keep the value of your RV, perform regular maintenance using the proper materials and procedures.

- Check the component manufacturer's information for the recommended cleaning agent.

Using the wrong cleaner may result in damage to the surfaces in your RV. To check if a cleaner will cause damage, test it in a small, out of sight area, or contact your dealer for assistance.

DO NOT use flammable liquids or sprays to clean your RV.

Cabinetry & Tables

- To keep cabinetry and tables looking like new, regularly dust the hardwood doors, cabinet fronts and tables.
- Use a soft cloth dampened with a cleaning polish or mild detergent solution.
- AVOID using ammonia based products or silicone oils as they may cause damage if used over a long period of time.
- Although the finish is durable and resistant to most household spills, they should be wiped up promptly to avoid any potential problems.
- Avoid prolonged exposure to direct sunlight, high temperatures or high humidity. These conditions can cause damage to both the finish and the wood itself.

Pantry

Your RV's **load capacity** is designed by *weight*, NOT *volume*. All available storage space cannot necessarily be used.

- Use the pantry to store items you wish to take with you as you travel and camp.
- The cabinetry has been designed to accommodate normal camping items (i.e., paper plates, flatware, cookware, etc.) which are bulky but not necessarily heavy.
- Make sure that all pantry items are secured so that they do not shift during travel.

Paneling

- To clean, use a mild solution of soap and lukewarm water with a soft sponge or cloth.
- DO NOT use abrasive cleaners as they could cause the vinyl to scratch and turn dull.
- Grease spots and stubborn dirt can be cleaned off with an all-purpose spray

Countertops

To prevent permanent damage:

- ALWAYS use hot pads or trivets under hot pans, dishes, or heat producing appliances such as frying pans.
- ALWAYS use a cutting board; never use a knife directly on the countertop.
- AVOID harsh chemicals such as drain cleaners, oven cleaners, etc.
- DO NOT leave cleaners with bleach on the surface. Wipe them off promptly.

Laminate countertops

Glass rings, food spills, water spots and smudges usually wipe off with a damp sponge. Stubborn stains can be removed with a general-purpose spray cleaner. Some stains can be removed by squeezing fresh lemon juice over the stain and allowing the juice to soak for approximately forty-five minutes. After 45 minutes, sprinkle baking soda over the lemon juice and rub with a soft cloth.

Solid surface countertops

Solid surface materials are easy to clean. Commercial solid surface cleaners, soapy water, or ammonia based cleaners will remove most dirt and residue from all types of finishes. AVOID window cleaners as they can leave a waxy build up that may dull the surface. A damp cloth followed by a dry towel will remove watermarks. Disinfect the surface periodically with diluted household bleach (one part **water** to one part **bleach**).

For additional information on the removal of difficult stains or surface damage repair, please refer to the countertop manufacturer's user guide.

Flooring

- ALWAYS test cleaning agents for colorfastness in a hidden or inconspicuous area.

Carpet

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner with a revolving brush or beater bar. Be sure the vacuum does not have teeth, combs or rough edges as they may damage the carpet. It is important to remove loose soil and debris while it is on the surface. Heavily traveled areas (i.e., walkways, areas in front of the furniture) may be protected with small throw rugs to prolong the life of the carpet.

Some spills contain chemicals that will destroy carpet fibers and dyes. If you have doubts about what caused the spot, contact a professional carpet cleaner. Because of the additional dirt typically associated with camping, we recommend that you vacuum the carpet frequently. Have tough and deep stains professionally steam cleaned. Use spot removers for minor spills. Always test the carpet for color fastness in an inconspicuous area before using any product.

Vinyl flooring

Periodically vacuum or sweep to remove dirt and gritty particles. Although most common spills will not permanently stain the vinyl floors, they are usually easier to remove if wiped up before they set. Simply blot with a paper towel and wipe clean with a damp cloth. As part of a regular maintenance program, sponge mop the entire floor. Do not use dish detergents or vinegar and water because they will dull your floor.

To care for the vinyl floor covering, use a damp mop with water and a mild cleaner. DO NOT SOAK THE FLOORING. Use care to avoid wetting the carpet edges. To prevent the linoleum from *yellowing*, avoid cleaners that contain oil based solvents (i.e. any cleaners containing lemon oil, Murphy's Oil Soap, etc.).

Free-Standing Table & Chairs

The free-standing dinette table can be positioned to seat up to four people. To prevent damage when traveling, the chairs must be fastened down securely, and the table must be closed into the travel position.

Furniture Upholstery

To retain the value of your RV, carefully maintain your furniture upholstery and keep the interior clean. Regularly vacuum the furniture using a soft brush attachment to remove any loose dirt or debris.

Fabric

Fabric should be professionally cleaned if it becomes stained or soiled. For more information, refer to the specific furniture manufacturer's care instructions.

Richloom Tough - *Proper Care/Cleaning Guidelines*

- Both PVC and Polyurethanes should be cleaned with a mild, *water-based* shampoo or soap.
- More stubborn stains can be cleaned with a mild, ***non-alcohol-based***, cleaning fluid.
- Rinse with clean water afterwards.

Suede

- Suede should be professionally cleaned if it becomes stained or soiled.

Vinyl

Vinyl should be professionally cleaned if it becomes stained or soiled. If a spill does occur:

- **USE water-based cleaners ONLY.**
- **BLOT up the spot.**
  - *DO NOT rub it in, or saturate the area.*
- **DO NOT use solvents.**
  - *Solvents may have an adverse reaction to the specific backing of your upholstery fabric.*
- **DO NOT dry clean any vinyl components.**
  - *If they are dry cleaned, the vinyl on the reverse side will shrink, become hard and crack.*
- **Clean the suede or vinyl upholstery ONLY as recommended.**
  - *Cleaning methods other than those listed, may produce undesired results and even damage the upholstery. This type of damage is not warrantable.*

Many free-standing dinette chairs have hidden storage.

Lift the seat cushion to access the storage area.

Theater Seating (If So Equipped)

Similar to a residential recliner, the Theater Seats allow you to recline the individual sections. To return the section back to the upright position, gently apply pressure to the recliner leg rest. Refer to the furniture manufacturer's care instructions for this product.

Tri-Fold Sofa (If So Equipped)

The Tri-Fold Sofa functions similar to a regular residential sofa bed. To convert the Tri-Fold Sofa to a bed, lift up and out on the front edge of the sofa seat, uncovering the legs. Fully extend the legs on both sides. Pull the sofa forward and place the legs flat on the floor. Pull the sofa back forward, and lay flat. To convert the Tri-Fold Sofa back into the upright sofa position, reverse the process. Refer to the furniture manufacturer's care instructions for this product.

*See **page 188-189**, Converting the Tri-Fold Sofa to a Bed.*

Decor Items

Decor Glass

Use a glass cleaner to remove smudges, smears and spots. If there is any decorative etching on the decor glass, use care when cleaning around that area.

Window treatments, curtains, blinds and shades

Dust occasionally with a vacuum and soft brush attachment. Professionally clean only.

Some, but not all, recliner loveseats have storage in the middle armrest.

ABS Plastic

DO NOT use gritty or abrasive particle soaps or scouring compound to clean ABS plastic. ABS plastic components will retain their original beauty with reasonable care. DUST & WIPE CLEAN with soft, damp cloth or chamois, wiping gently.

- AVOID using *Citrus* or *biodegradable* cleaners containing D-Limonene; these cleaners may damage plastic materials.

Fiberglass Shower Walls

To clean the walls of the fiberglass shower, use a mild detergent soap and warm water. NEVER use gritty or abrasive particle soaps or scouring compound to clean the fiberglass.

Sink & Shower Fixtures

Use mild dish soap and water to clean these fixtures. Do not use harsh chemicals or sprays. A mild solution of vinegar and water works well to remove hard water spots and stains from the sink or shower fixture

Stainless Steel Sink & Appliances

- DO NOT use abrasive cleaners, scouring pads or steel wool.
- DO NOT use oven cleaner or any cleaners containing bleach or chloride.
- Hard water that evaporates on a Stainless Steel surface can leave spots.

1. Dampen a soft cloth in warm water mixed with a mild dish soap.
2. Wipe the surface. Clean *with the grain,* not across.
3. Rinse the cloth and wipe again.
4. Blot the surface dry with a towel to prevent water spots.

Glass cleaner or a cleaners made specifically for stainless steel may also be used. BEFORE cleaning the entire surface, test the cleaner on a small hidden area.

Exterior Care

Many different materials comprise the RV exterior including; glass, fiberglass gel-coat, plastics, aluminum, automotive grade paint finishes, and sealant.

- The chance of damage to the exterior finish increases the longer a foreign substance remains on the surface.
- Frequent washing and waxing is the best way to protect your RV from this damage.

The following materials deposited on the RV's surface may result in corrosion, staining, and/or chemical spotting:

- Road Tar, Dirt, and Dust
- Road Salt and Sodium Chloride
- Bird Droppings / Bugs / Tree Sap
- Acid Rain / Industrial Fallout / Pollution
- UV Exposure and Moisture

Cleaning the Exterior

Frequent washings also protect your RV from environmental conditions, such as rain, snow and salt air.

- WASH your RV as soon as possible if it becomes contaminated with foreign material.
- AVOID parking under trees or near ocean sea salt.
- DO NOT *scrape* ice or snow from the painted surface, ALWAYS *brush off* the affected area.
- If anti-freeze, gasoline or any solvents are spilled on the painted surface, RINSE the area with water *immediately*.
- Bugs and bird droppings should be rinsed off daily.

Washing

- DO NOT wash the RV in direct sunlight.
- PARK in the shade and spray RV with water to remove dust.
- Next, using an ample amount of clean water and a sponge or car washing mitt, WASH the RV from top to bottom.
- Use a mild car-washing soap if necessary.
- RINSE thoroughly & WIPE DRY with a chamois or soft cloth.
- Carefully CLEAN the joints and flanges of the slideout, doors, etc. where dirt is likely to remain.

Cleaning the Exterior, Continued

AVOID forcing water inside the RV.
This could damage component parts.

EXTREME CAUTION should be used with any type of pressure sprayer around all attachments, doors, windows, appliance vents, etc.

NOTE: Some types of hot water washing equipment apply HEAT and HIGH PRESSURE to the RV.

Excessive HEAT - can cause distortion or damage to resin parts.

Excessive PRESSURE - can flood the RV's interior.

- DO NOT take your RV through automatic car washes.
- **DO NOT use a direct high pressure spray on any Decals, Graphics, or Labels**.
- Keep the washing nozzle about 16 inches (40 cm) or more away from the RV body.
- When washing around the door, vent and glass areas, hold the nozzle at right angles to the surface.
- If chalking occurs, first wash and wax a small area to see if the luster returns.
- Have your dealer inspect the RV If the exterior becomes scratched, nicked or cracked.

During cold weather

IF the slideout or door is frozen shut, opening it by FORCE may tear off or crack its rubber gasket and *RUIN* the weatherproof seal.

1. INSTEAD, pour warm water on the gasket to melt the ice.
2. Then, AFTER opening the slideout or door, wipe off the water thoroughly.
3. To prevent the weather stripping from freezing, treat it with a silicone spray.
4. **Salt and other chemicals spread on winter roads can have a detrimental effect on the RV's underbody.**

- ***If your RV is exposed to these conditions:***
  - WASH the exterior of your RV and carefully spray the underbody with a high-pressure hose, *and*
  - REMOVE any mud or debris that could trap/hold salt or moisture.
  - After washing your RV, WIPE OFF all water drops from the rubber parts around the slideout and doors.

Waxing your RV

Wax your RV once or twice a year, or when painted surfaces do not shed water well. Use a soft cloth to apply a small amount of wax to the painted surfaces. After the wax has dried, polish the RV with a dry, soft cloth.

- DO NOT wax your RV in direct sunlight. Apply wax only when the surfaces of your RV are cool to the touch.
- DO NOT apply any wax on the weatherstrip around the RV's various openings. If it is stained with wax, the weatherstrip cannot maintain a weatherproof seal.
- DO NOT apply wax to **Decals, Graphics, or Labels**.
- DO NOT apply wax to any area with a flat black finish as it can cause discoloration.

If the finish has been stained with wax:

- WIPE OFF the area with a soft cloth and warm water.

Polishing your RV

If painted surfaces have been severely damaged and have lost their original luster and color tone, polish the surface lightly with a fine polishing compound. Avoid limiting your polishing to the damaged surface only; polish a somewhat wider area, moving the polishing cloth in one direction. After polishing, flush the compound from the surface and apply a coat of wax to regain a beautiful luster.

Damaged paint

Touch up small cracks and scratches in the paint coat of the FW front cap as soon as possible with touch-up film or paint. Carefully check the body areas facing the road and the tires for damage to the paint coat caused by flying stones, etc. Purchase automotive touch-up paint locally, use the closest paint match available. *See **page 216**, Trailer Frame*.

Cleaning plastic parts

Use a sponge or chamois to clean plastic parts. Use warm water and a soft cloth or chamois to remove any white residue from dark colored plastic surfaces. DO NOT use a scrubbing brush or other hard tools as they may damage the plastic surface. DO NOT use wax containing abrasives that may damage the plastic surface.

Chrome parts

To prevent chrome parts from spotting or corroding, WASH with water, DRY thoroughly, and APPLY a non-abrasive automotive wax. If the chrome is severely damaged or pitted, use a commercially available chrome polish product.

NOTICE

DO NOT use a buffer and a buffing compound as it may damage the exterior surface. Please contact a professional paint body shop for assistance.

NOTICE

DO NOT use waxes containing high-abrasive compounds. Such waxes remove rust and stains effectively, but they are also harmful to the luster of the surface, since they may scrape off the coating. Further, they are detrimental to glossy surfaces, such as the grille, garnish, moldings, etc.

DO NOT use gasoline or paint thinners to remove road tar or other contamination to the painted surface.

NOTICE

DO NOT allow plastic to come into contact with brake fluid, engine oil, grease, paint thinner, or battery acid. These will damage plastic.

Use a soft cloth and a mild detergent solution to wipe away any such contact.

⚠WARNING

As with the surface of any roof, a rubber roof can be very slippery, especially when wet. If you go up on your roof we recommend extreme caution and suggest that you navigate the roof on your hands and feet. This distributes the weight more evenly and helps reduce the possibility of falling.

NOTICE

Failure to properly maintain or re-seal your RV may result in serious water damage to the roof and other parts of the RV.

This damage is not covered by the Limited Base Warranty and the Limited Structural Warranty.

NOTICE

DO NOT use petroleum distillates to clean the roof as they may cause permanent damage.

Exterior Roof

To Maintain Your Roof Warranty:

PLEASE NOTE: ONLY THE CORRECT, RECOMMENDED ALPHA SYSTEMS SEALANTS SHOULD COME IN CONTACT WITH YOUR ALPHA ROOF MEMBRANE.

With the SuperFlex Roof Membrane - Use ONLY:

- **1010 Non-Sag Sealant, *and***
- **1021 Self Leveling Sealant.**

1. **INSPECT all roof sealant every three (3) months for voids, gaps and cracks, *then* RE-SEAL as needed.**
2. **WASH the roof membrane with water and a mild detergent *3-4 times per year*, CLEAN & INSPECT the roof vents.**

- **DO NOT use solvents during cleaning.** Solvents can damage existing sealant and may weaken plastic roof components.
- **DO NOT use sharp tools (putty knife) that could puncture the roof membrane.**
- If any voids or cracking are found, remove any loose sealant ***by hand***.
  - If the *loose sealant* cannot be pulled off by hand, then it still has good adhesion to the roof membrane and should be left alone.
- Using a medium-bristled scrub brush, CLEAN all areas to be resealed with a non-abrasive household cleaner, such as Top Job® or Spic-N-Span®.
- This area **must** be dry before continuing.

3. **APPLY a generous amount of the <u>correct</u> Alpha Systems sealant over the top of any existing sealant in the area being resealed.**
   - Use Self-Leveling Sealant on *horizontal* surfaces.
   - Use Non-Sag Sealant on *vertical* surfaces.

Sidewall Vents

Water heater, furnace and refrigerator exterior doors need to be kept clean and free of obstructions while the appliances (if so equipped) are in use. Inspect the refrigerator and holding tank vents for blockages from bird or insect nests, spiderwebs, leaves, etc.

Sealants

Sealants perform a very important function and should be inspected closely and regularly maintained. We incorporate many different types of sealants, including butyl/putty, black butyl-encapsulated foam, silicone (clear and colored), roof sealant and foam. In general, sealants do not have a “set” lifetime. Varying environmental factors affect the pliability and adhesiveness of sealants

Sealants may become damaged due to exposure to the elements, freezing temperatures, ultraviolet, and air pollution. If deteriorated, repair immediately to prevent damage. A quick walk around the RV before leaving may help prevent potential problems during trips and vacations. Your dealer service or parts manager can help you obtain the correct sealant(s).

You or your dealer MUST:

- ***INSPECT all sealants, every three (3) months***. CHECK the roof and all four sides of the RV including all moldings, doors, vents and exterior attachments.
- REPLACE the sealant if you notice any cracks, peeling, voids, gaps, breaks, looseness or any sign of physical deterioration.
- RESEAL at least one time each year as preventative maintenance. Always use the same type of sealant that was removed.

If you notice water inside the RV, immediately have the dealer check for the source of the leak. Failure to correct the leak may result in serious damage to your RV; this damage may not be warrantable.

If you have questions and/or need assistance with sealing your RV, consult with your RV dealer.

Roof Ladder

A folding roof ladder is standard equipment on your Momentum. The RV roof has decking under the rubber roof membrane to allow you to walk on the roof (with caution) to do maintenance.

- **ALWAYS check that both locking pins are in place when the ladder is in the stowed (travel) position.**

WARNING

If your RV is equipped with a roof ladder:

- DO NOT exceed the weight limit of 300 lbs.
- DO NOT leave items attached to the ladder while traveling.

Roof Ladder

Roof Ladder Locking Pins

NOTICE

DO NOT add items to the RV rear bumper. Add-on items will eventually damage your bumper. Damage caused by such aftermarket equipment installation or improper loading voids the Limited Base Warranty & Limited Structural Warranty.

Rear Bumper

- **The rear bumper of your RV is NOT designed to carry cargo.**
- Extra weight behind the trailer's axles may *reduce* the **Hitch Weight** (leading to adverse handling conditions from wind gusts and passing traffic).
- Items that extend beyond the bumper will place undo strain on the bumper.
- Over time, weight added to the bumper will cause damage from the motion created while traveling.

Trailer Frame

Rocks, sand, road debris, climate (salt air exposure) and especially ice inhibiting chemicals used during the winter months will damage your frame's painted exterior, inviting rust and other deterioration.

- Regularly inspect all exposed areas of the frame.
- To maintain protection, **clean** and **repaint** any chipped areas or rust spots.

Windows

Any ventilating window may permit water inside, especially during heavy rainstorms. Condensation will also cause water to accumulate on windows and in the tracks. Normally the window glass can be cleaned with a sponge and water.

- Use *glass cleaner* to remove wax, oil, grease, dead insects, etc.
- After washing the glass, wipe it dry with a clean, soft cloth.

Winterizing / RV Storage Preparation

To help prevent problems, prepare your RV for extended periods of non-use. This will also make it easier to get your RV ready for the next camping trip or season.

- **In colder climates, BEFORE storing for the winter, be sure your RV's plumbing system is properly *Winterized* to prevent costly freeze-ups.**

1. CHECK your roof and other surfaces for any damage or potential leaks that could go unnoticed until it is too late.
2. CLOSE all windows and roof vents.
3. TURN OFF 12-volt DC/120-volt AC/propane to the refrigerator; defrost and clean.
4. USE crumpled newspaper or open boxes of baking soda in the refrigerator to eliminate odors during storage.
5. SHUT OFF the propane cylinder valve(s).
6. COVER all external outlets/vents (furnace, exhaust, etc.) to prevent mice or other rodents from entering.
7. COVER the roof air conditioner (if so equipped).
8. DISCONNECT 120-volt AC power to the RV.
9. DO NOT use the leveling legs during storage.
10. DRAIN all water lines.
11. FLUSH, *then* DRAIN ***ALL*** holding tanks; fresh water, gray water, black water and the water heater.
12. DISCONNECT the battery cables from the auxiliary battery terminals & REMOVE all batteries from the RV.
    - Store batteries in a place where they will not freeze. If a battery is frozen, it will no longer hold a proper charge.
13. WASH the interior and the exterior of your RV thoroughly.
14. STORE your RV indoors, under a roof or purchase a *breathable* cover for use during storage.
15. TO PREVENT weather checking and other UV damage, cover tires that are exposed to sunlight.

Snow removal

During the storage period, remove snow from the top of your RV to prevent damage to the unit's structure.

Damage from birds, rodents, insect, etc., is NOT covered under the Limited Base Warranty and Limited Structural Warranty applicable to your RV.

NOTICE

Excessive snow, 8" or more, or ice, 2" or more, places excessive weight on the RV roof. Remove excessive snow or ice as needed. Care MUST be exercised to not damage the roof material when removing snow & ice. Excessive weight can damage the roof, seals, etc. Water leaks and poor fit or operation are the results of this damage.

This page is intentionally blank.

Maintenance

Suggested Maintenance Checklist

Here is a quick reference list of suggested areas for regular maintenance. Review all manufacturer's operators manuals supplied with your RV to perform the maintenance items listed.

Prior to first trip

- INSPECT and reseal as needed.
- HAVE *your dealer* CHECK the propane system for leaks.
- CHECK wheel lug nuts at specified intervals to the listed torque specifications, RE-TORQUE as needed.
- SANITIZE the fresh water system.
- TEST all safety alarms.

First two hundred miles

- CHECK wheel nuts at specified intervals to listed torque values. RE-TORQUE as needed.
- HAVE a *Qualified Service Technician* adjust the brakes.

Each trip

- INSPECT and re-seal as needed.
- CHECK the auxiliary battery.
- CHECK running lights.
- CHECK tire pressure and wear, including spare.
  - *The tires should be COLD when checking the tire pressure. See* ***page 50****.*
- CHECK wheel nuts at specified intervals to the listed torque values. RE-TORQUE as needed.
- FLUSH out water heater tank.
- TEST the brakes.
- TEST all safety alarms.

See ***page 56****, Wheel Nut Torque & Wheel Torque Requirement Table*

Required Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Item	Every trip	Monthly	Every 3 months	Every 6 months	Annually	Before/After Storage	**Procedure to be Performed:** Maintenance schedules are ***minimum*** requirements. Extended use, extreme temperatures, high humidity or other extreme conditions will require more frequent maintenance.
Appliances					●	●	Check settings & adjustments per manufacturers guide.
		●				●	Make sure burner tubes / vent are clean/unobstructed.
					●	●	Clean & sanitize.
Awnings						●	Wash with warm water and mild detergent.
					●	●	Clean moving parts & apply Silicone or Teflon based dry lube.
Axles / Suspension						●	Check U-bolts, springs & hangers for damage.
					●	●	Check torque - all bolts (*see mfg. guide for specs*).
			●				Inspect and lube wet bolts with a "squirt" of grease every 3 months (quarterly).
Baggage Doors		●				●	Confirm that doors seal tight and are not leaking.
			●			●	Spray lock tumblers with dry graphite.
Brakes / Wheel Hubs					●		Have brakes and hubs inspected by a certified RV service technician.
					●		Check amp draw / shoe wear / adjustment (*see mfg. guide for specs.*)
					●		Lube bearings every 12 months (*as required*).
Electrical System	●		●			●	Check and service batteries.
			●		●	●	Test all GFI outlets.
					●	●	Service generator (*if equipped*) per manufacturer's manual.
Entry Door(s)	●					●	Make sure door latches and locks function properly.
			●			●	Lube hinges with Silicone or Teflon based dry lube.
			●			●	Adjust screen door and latch.
Emergency Egress Window(s)	●	●				●	Open and close the *Emergency Egress Window*(*s*) every trip.
Entry Steps				●		●	Clean & apply Silicone or Teflon based dry lube.
Exterior Fiberglass / Metal			●			●	Wash with warm water & mild detergent.
				●			Apply non-abrasive wax (*except on decals*).
Exterior Moldings			●			●	Inspect sealant for voids / gaps / cracks and re-seal as necessary.
Frame / Underbelly					●	●	Check for damage, loose wires and debris. Clean as necessary.
			●			●	Check frame for chipped paint and rust, repaint as necessary.

Required Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Item	Every trip	Monthly	Every 3 months	Every 6 months	Annually	Before / After storage	**Procedure to be Performed:** Maintenance schedules are ***minimum*** requirements. Extended use, extreme temperatures, high humidity or other extreme conditions will require more frequent maintenance.
Hitch / Coupler					●	●	Check for damage and wear. Clean and Lubricate (with grease)
LP System					●		Have system tested for leaks by a qualified dealer.
					●		Have pressure and regulator setting checked by a qualified dealer.
Plumbing System			●		●	●	Check hoses, fittings and pipes for leak. Tighten as required.
					●	●	Lubricate termination gate valve cables with Silicone or Teflon based dry lube.
					●	●	Winterize system before storage (*in cold weather locations*)
	●				●		Drain Fresh Water Holding Tanks after every trip. Sanitize Annually (*or as needed*)
	●						Drain & Flush Black & Gray Water Holding Tanks
Roof And Roof Attachments			●			●	Inspect sealant for voids / gaps / cracks and re-seal as necessary.
				●		●	Clean roof with water and mild detergent.
					●	●	Clean and lube roof vent mechanisms with light oil.
Safety Equipment	●			●		●	Check operation of detectors - recharge and replace batteries every 6 months if equipped.
				●	●		Test and check fire extinguisher for proper charge.
	●	●				●	Test and confirm *Emergency Egress Window*(*s*) function properly.
Slide Rooms					●		Slideout room adjustment performed by a certified RV service technician.
	●						Check slide roof for debris - clear as necessary.
	●		●			●	Check and clean all seals.
Wheels & Tires	●		●			●	Check wheel lugs for proper torque.
			●			●	Inspect tires for wear / damage / etc.
	●	●				●	Check tire inflation pressure (*see tire label for pressures*).

Basic Troubleshooting

WARNING

WORKING WITH ELECTRICAL APPLIANCES CAN BE EXTREMELY DANGEROUS.

Always have your dealer or a certified professional perform all repairs to your appliances and/or RV electrical system.

Air Conditioner (Roof)

Will not operate

- Make sure unit is turned on.
- Check circuit breakers in coach.
- Have your dealer check to see if there is proper voltage from shoreline or generator.

Unit runs, but coil freezes and compressor cycles too soon

- Control setting may be too low, cycles too soon.
- Make sure the filter is clean and unobstructed.
- Have the coolant level checked by a qualified service facility.

Does not get cold enough

- Start the unit before the day gets too hot.
- To offset heat gain:
  - Close all windows and blinds.
  - Keep entrance doors closed.
  - Use awnings.
  - Avoid using heat-producing appliances.
- Make sure the outside coil is not blocked or damaged.
- Have your dealer check to make sure you have the proper voltage.

Should your air conditioner still not work after completing the above checks, contact a qualified service facility to perform more extensive testing.

Electrical Power

No AC power to RV

- Check circuit breakers at power center. The 120-volt circuit breaker may be off or tripped.
- Have a dealer check that there is power to the shoreline receptacle.

Furnace

Furnace does not ignite and/or cycles frequently

- Check that propane tank is full.
- Remove any obstruction over furnace exhaust.
- Inspect exhaust tube for any obstructions.
- Check fuse in fuse panel and replace if necessary.
- Make sure that return air grill is unobstructed. Remove anything that is stored in furnace compartment that could block airflow.
- Check that heat outlet registers are open and that register openings are unobstructed.
- Make sure that 12-volt power is present.
- Contact your dealer if the problem persists.

⚠WARNING

DO NOT attempt to repair or adjust the furnace.

Turn off the thermostat and furnace gas control valve, then contact your dealer or authorized service center.

To Access the ON/OFF Switch, Remove the Outside Furnace Panel

Generator (If So Equipped)

Starter engages while holding down the start button, but generator does not start

- Generator may be out of fuel. (Generator will not operate when the fuel tank is less than ¼ full).
- Generator may be low on oil. Check the oil level.

When the generator start button is pushed, nothing happens

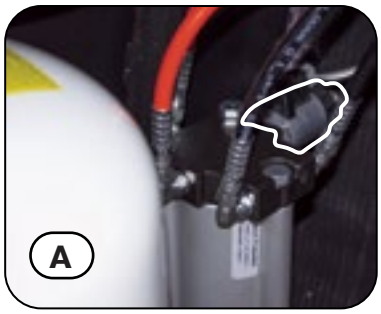
- Check that the battery disconnect switch button is pushed.
- Check 12 Volt fuse on generator.
- Reset circuit breaker if necessary.
- Contact your dealer or a qualified RV technician if problem is not resolved.

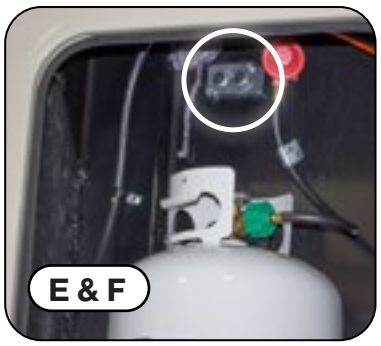
Generator starts, but lacks electrical power

- Breaker switches may be off or tripped at generator. Reset breaker if necessary.
- Breaker may be off or tripped inside power center. Reset main breaker if necessary.

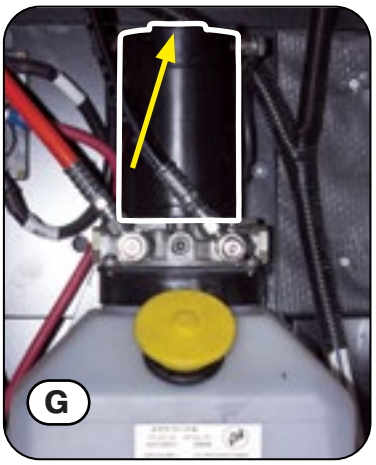
Generator just makes clicking sound when trying to start

- Battery condition may be low. Recharge if necessary.
- Check for poor ground or battery connection.





*Valves **A**, **E** & **F** Are Located in the Forward, Door-Side LP Compartment*



*Valves **B**, **C**, **D** & Hydraulic Pump **G** Are Located in the Front Compartment*

Hydraulic System - Manual Override
(If So Equipped)

Question: ***When would I need to manually override the hydraulic system?***

Answer: In the event your RV loses electric power.

Question: ***Will this work if I have a leaking hydraulic hose?***

Answer: This depends on the severity of the leak.

If there is a rupture in the hydraulic line, this process WILL NOT work. You will need to contact a mobile service for assistance.

Tools Needed

- A cordless drill with a Philips screw bit (any size)
- A 5/32” Allen wrench

Valve directions

- Rotating a hydraulic system override valve ***clockwise*** will open it.
- Rotating a hydraulic system override valve ***counter-clockwise*** will close it.

Valve	Description	Typical Location
A	Extend/Retract the Front Landing Legs.	Forward Door Side LP Compartment
B	Extend/Retract the Door Side Leveling Legs.	Front Compartment
C	Extend/Retract the Off-Door Side Leveling Legs.	Front Compartment
D	Open/Close the Slide Room Valve Block (Which Houses Valve E & F)	Front Compartment
E	Extend/Retract the Hydraulic Door Side Slide Room	Forward Door Side LP Compartment
F	Extend/Retract the Hydraulic Off-Door Side Slide Room	Forward Door Side LP Compartment

To manually retract the slideout rooms and landing/leveling jacks, you MUST complete the process in the following order:

1. Slideouts, one at a time (using IRC controls)
2. Rear Stabilization Jacks
3. Hitch the RV to your tow vehicle
4. Retract Front Landing Gear

Step 1. Retract the hydraulic slideouts

1.1 REMOVE the protective directional sticker on the top of the pump motor **(G)**.

1.2 INSERT the Philips head side of the screw bit into your cordless drill – the hex end is a perfect fit into the drive end of the pump motor.

1.3 LOCATE the valve manifold. On Grand Design RV hydraulic systems, the slide valve is located on the top of the manifold next to the blue pressure retract switch **(D)**.

1.4 OPEN the valve by inserting the 5/32" Allen wrench into the top of the valve and carefully rotating *clockwise* to open the valve. We recommend using just your thumb and index finger.

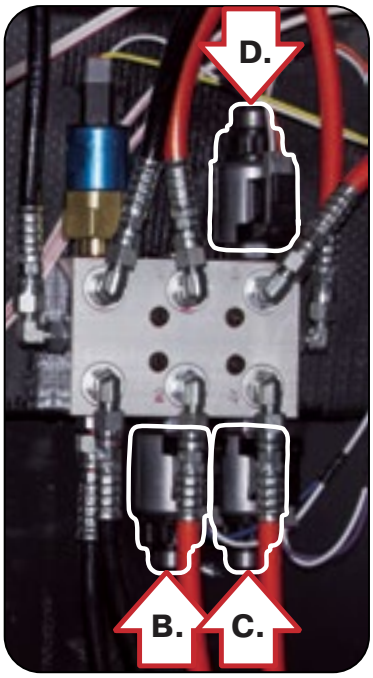
1.5 ISOLATE the individual slides by closing all by one of the IRC valves. Each valve controls one side of the RV **(E & F)**.

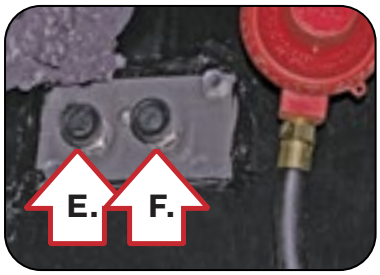
1.6 CONNECT your cordless drill to the end of the pump motor and rotate *counter-clockwise* (unscrew) to actuate the slide. Continue rotating the drill until the slide is fully retracted and sealed.

1.7 REPEAT process by working through the IRC controls.

1.8 *Once all hydraulic slides are retracted*,

- CLOSE the slide valve **(D)** by turning the 5/32" Allen wrench *counter-clockwise* until finger tight (thumb and index finger).





Hydraulic System - Manual Override, Continued

Step 2. Retract the Rear Stabilization Jacks

2.1 On Grand Design RV hydraulic systems, the rear stabilizer jack valves are located on the bottom of the manifold below the pressure switch and the slide valve **(B & C)**.

2.2 Begin on the bottom left valve. OPEN the valve by inserting the 5/32” Allen wrench into the valve and carefully rotating *clockwise* to open the valve.

2.3 CONNECT your cordless drill to the end of the pump motor and rotate *counter-clockwise* (unscrew) to actuate the slide.

- CONTINUE rotating the drill until the stabilizer jacks on the door side are fully retracted. Once fully retracted, close the valve finger tight.

2.4 REPEAT the process with the opposite valve until the jacks are fully retracted and the valve is returned to the closed position.

Step 3. Hitch the RV to your tow vehicle

3.1 LOCATE the valve on your front landing gear. You can access through your door-side propane compartment door **(A)**.

3.2 OPEN the valve with your 5/32” Allen wrench and RAISE your unit (turn drill clockwise) to hitch height.

3.3 CLOSE the valve.

3.4 POSITION tow vehicle under the pin box until connected.

- If needed, REPEAT Steps 3.2 and 3.3, until the receiver is fully engaged to the kingpin.

Step 4. Retract Front Landing Gear

4.1 RUN the cordless drill counterclockwise until the front landing gear are fully retracted.

4.2 CLOSE the valve.

Interior Lights

Lights flicker

- Loose or defective bulb. Tighten or replace as needed.
- Converter is overheating. Open the cover to cool down and reduce the load by turning off some 12-volt lights.

Lights dim or are half bright

- Low battery connection. Check battery condition and recharge if necessary.
- Possible converter malfunction. Have converter checked by an authorized service center.
- Possible loss of ground. Check for loose wire connection.

Microwave

Will not operate

- Door open or timer OFF. Close door and turn ON timer.
- No power to oven. Check power supply and circuit breaker.

Monitor Panel

No lights on panel when switch is pressed

- Check battery voltage and condition.
- Check fuse at the battery; if fuse is good have a dealer or qualified RV technician check the condition of panel.

Holding tank lights deliver false readings (i.e. 1/3 or 2/3 indication)

- Verify tank is empty.
- Debris may be built up across probes.
  - CLEAN and FLUSH tank using a solution of two-parts vinegar mixed to one-part water.

Propane indicator display indicates E or F all the time

- Ensure propane gas tank is full.
- If display reads ***F***, check the wiring or sending unit for malfunction.
- Have it inspected by a certified technician.

Outside Receptacle

No power to outside receptacle

- Make sure you have power to the shoreline.
- Check breaker on generator.
- GFCI receptacle switch may be OFF or *tripped*.
  - Re-Set GFCI at receptacle in bathroom or kitchen.
- Check the breaker in the power center or panel box.
- Contact a dealer or qualified RV technician if problem is not resolved.

Oven

Oven slow to heat up, poor baking, poor ignition of burners, pilots won't stay lit, popping sound from top burners, carbon on pilot shield or burner flame *too low* or *too high*

- A ***defective*** *Gas Pressure Regulator* may cause these conditions. Have the regulator tested by your gas dealer or a certified RV technician.

Top burner or oven burner won't light or won't stay lit

- Check position of top burners and flash tubing.
- Clean clogged burner ports with a toothpick.
- See Oven Owner's Manual for proper care and maintenance.

Gas smell

- Check all connections with leak detector solution.

Food burns on the bottom

- Oven is too full for proper circulation. Use smaller pans or put less food in the oven.

Propane Gas

Smell gas in or around unit

- Propane tanks may be overfilled.

IF YOU SMELL PROPANE

1. **EXTINGUISH any open flames, pilot lights and all smoking materials.**
2. **DO NOT touch electrical switches.**
3. **Shut OFF the propane supply at the container valve(s) or propane supply connection.**
4. **OPEN doors and other ventilating openings.**
5. **Leave the area until odor clears.**
6. **Have the propane system checked and leakage source corrected before using again.**

FAILURE TO COMPLY COULD RESULT IN EXPLOSION RESULTING IN DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY

DANGER

IF YOU SMELL PROPANE GAS
STOP!

Quickly and carefully perform the 6-step procedure in the red box.

WARNING

WORKING WITH PROPANE CAN BE DANGEROUS.

Always have repairs to your LP system performed by your dealer or a certified professional.

Refrigerator

The control panel lights are not illuminated

- Check coach circuit breakers and GFCI receptacle.
- Verify that refrigerator is plugged into the 120-volt outlet.
- If using propane gas, verify house batteries have adequate charge.

Lights are illuminating, but no cooling

- Use a proper power source that is available and cooling operation to specification.
- Make sure the refrigerator unit is level.
- Allow sufficient time for proper cool down and try to load with food that is already cold.
- Have a qualified RV technician check that the vents and chimney at the rear of the refrigerator are clear and unobstructed.
- Have a qualified RV technician make sure the burner jets or burners are not dirty or damaged.
- Have a qualified RV technician check the fuses in the black electrical box on the rear of the refrigerator.

Refrigerator, Continued

Heavy frost buildup on the evaporator fins

- Defrost the freezer and refrigerator.
- Have the refrigerator checked by your dealer or a qualified RV technician.

Running Lights

Running lights not working

- Blown fuse. Replace fuse with one of the same ampere rating.
- Bad bulbs. Replace the bulbs with new.

Slideout

Room move in and out very slowly, binds or squeaks

- Lubricate the slide-out tubes and rollers with light spray lube.

Water is getting in at the bottom corners of the room

- Verify that the exterior seals are against the room at the top and not turned in when the room is out (HORIZONTAL SEAL *OVERLAPS* VERTICAL). Also, check for voids in the seal on the slide roof and side panels.
- Make sure weep hole in ramp pan is open and unobstructed.

Room will not move in or out

- Check the auto-resetting fuse located by the slideout motor. *See the manufacturer's manual.*
- Check battery condition and state of charge. Recharge if necessary.

Rollers leave tracks in the carpet as the room extends

- This is normal. There are many pounds of weight pressing these rollers down on the carpet and rollers will compress the nap of the carpet down. Raking the nap or vacuuming will solve the problem.

Termination Valve

Termination valve leaks

- Debris keeps valve from seating. Clear debris from and around valve O-ring set.
- Bad gasket. Have your dealer or qualified RV technician replace gasket with new.

TV Antenna

Poor TV reception

- Antenna Power switch is OFF. Turn ON power switch.
- Bad connections at TV or wall plate. Make sure the connections are good at both TV and wall plate.
- Cut or torn cable. Have your dealer or qualified RV technician replace bad cable where needed at TV and antenna.

Waste Tank

Waste tank (black) will not drain

- Build up or debris in tank. Check for buildup in tank at stool.
- Always use a minimum amount of biodegradable RV toilet paper.
- Always use plenty of water when flushing.
- Check termination valve for proper operation.

Water Heater - Furrion Tankless

- See *Troubleshooting* in the manufacturer's user manual found in the *Owner Information Package*.

There is an odor that smells like rotten eggs

- If your fresh water source has a rotten egg odor, you will need to find another source of fresh water before flushing or refilling the entire RV water storage system.

To remove the hydrogen sulfide (rotten egg) odor:

1. TURN OFF your main water supply; that is, your pump or your water hookup source.
2. DRAIN your water lines and water heater.
   - *See **page 120**, Water Heater, Furrion Tankless*
   - *Drain & Blow Out Water Lines and Water Heater.*

- If the water drains slowly or sporadically (instead of flowing freely), OPEN the *Pressure Safety Valve* to allow air into the line.

3. AFTER completely draining, FLUSH the entire system with a solution of 2-parts vinegar / 1-part water, from the *water inlet* all the way to the *holding tank*.
4. If you decide to use air pressure (30 PSI max.), it may be applied through the *City Water* inlet.
   - With the drain valve OPEN, the air pressure will force the remaining water out of the tank.
   - If air pressure is unavailable, you may FLUSH the water heater with fresh water. Water should be pumped into the lines with the assistance of the on board water pump or with the assistance of external water pressure.
5. CONTINUE this flushing process for approximately five (5) minutes allowing ample time for the fresh water to agitate the stagnant water on the bottom of the tank and force the deposits through the drain opening.
6. AFTER steps 1-6 (above) are complete, CLOSE the drain plug *and* the *Pressure Safety Valve*. FLUSH the lines with fresh water.

If you use your vehicle frequently or for long periods of time, flushing the lines several times a year will help prolong the life of the water heater.

Water Pump

Pump will not start

- Check that house battery disconnect switch is ON.
- Check pump switch at monitor panel.
- Check fuse in power center.
- Check to see if water is frozen.

Will not prime, sputters (no discharge, but the motor runs)

- Check that there is a sufficient amount of fresh water,
  - Use the *Monitor Panel* to check the fresh water tank fill level.
- Check that there is not trapped air in the hot water heater.
- Check for frozen water lines or water tank.

Pump will not shut off, runs when faucet is closed

- Turn off the pump or city water supply.
- Check for damp areas around plumbing appliances.
- Check plumbing for leaks
- Inspect toilet for leaky valves.
- Have the pump checked by your dealer or a qualified RV technician.

Water System

Wet areas near water connections, pump runs while the faucets are closed, and no other fresh water fixtures are being used.

- There is a possible leak,
- CLOSE all low point water drains and tank drains.
- TURN OFF all fixtures.
- Check all fixtures and connections for tightness.
  - DO NOT *over-tighten* fittings as this may cause additional leakage.

This page is intentionally blank.

Glossary

AC ELECTRICITY—Alternating current also known as shoreline power. For purposes of this manual, it refers to 120-volt AC (abbreviated 120 VAC).

AMP—Short for ampere, the electric current unit of measure. RV sites with electric hookup will specify the maximum amps supported, which generally come in units of 20, 30, or 50 amps. The RV power connector must match the various plugs of the site amp rating.

ANODE ROD—An anode rod, when used in a water heater, attracts corrosion causing products in the water. These products attack the anode rod instead of the metal tank itself. The anode rod should be inspected yearly and changed when it is reduced to about 1/4 of its original size. The rods are used in steel water heater tanks - an aluminum tank has an inner layer of anode metal to accomplish the same thing. Anode rods should not be installed in aluminum tanks!

AUXILIARY BATTERY—For purposes of this manual, the term refers to the 12-volt DC group 27 deep cycle battery (customer purchased) that should be installed in your RV.

AWNING—A roof-like structure made of canvas or other artificial materials which extends from the RV body to provide shade. Awnings are generally placed over entrances. Some extend and stow manually while others are operated electrically.

BLACK WATER—Term associated with the sewage holding tank. The toilet drains directly into this tank.

BLUE BOY—Also known as a honey pot. Refers to a portable waste holding tank that has wheels on one end. These tanks often are manufactured out of blue plastic, hence the nickname.

BOON DOCKING—Also known as dry camping. Camping without electrical and water hookups.

BREAKAWAY SWITCH—An electrical switch on trailers designed to engage the breaks in case the trailer breaks away from the tow vehicle. The switch is connected by a cable to the tow vehicle. Breakaway is detected when the switch cable is pulled out during vehicle separation.

BRAKE CONTROLLER—A device (customer supplied) mounted under the dash of a towing vehicle to control the braking system of the RV. Most brake actuators are based on a time delay application; the longer the brakes are applied tighter the trailer brakes react

BRITISH THERMAL UNIT (BTU)—Measurement of heat that is the quantity required to raise the temperature of one pound of water 1°F. RV air-conditioners and furnaces are BTU-rated.

CAMBER (WHEEL ALIGNMENT)—The number of degrees each wheel is off of vertical. Looking from the front, tops of wheels farther apart than bottoms means “positive camber”. As the load pushes the front end down, or the springs get weak, camber would go from positive to none to negative (bottoms of wheels farther apart than tops).

CAMPER—For purposes of this manual, this term refers to your fifth wheel RV.

CAMPING—An outdoor recreational activity involving the spending of one or more nights in a tent, primitive structure or RV at a campsite with the purpose of getting away from civilization and enjoying nature.

CAMPSITE—The term usually means an area where an individual or family might go camping.

CARBON MONOXIDE—A colorless, odorless and poisonous gas.

CARGO WEIGHT—The actual weight of all items added to the Curb Weight of the vehicle or trailer. This includes personal cargo, optional equipment, and tongue or king pin weight.

CARGO CARRYING CAPACITY (CCC)—Equal to GVWR minus each of the following: UVW, full fresh (potable) water weight (including water heater), full propane weight and SCWR.

CITY WATER—Term associated with the water supply you hook up to at the campsite. It is called city water because water is pulled from a central outside source (like a city) and not the fresh water tank.

CONDENSATION—A result of warm moisture laden air contacting the cold window glass. Keeping a roof vent open helps to reduce the humidity levels. Added roof vent covers help to prevent cold air from dropping down through the vent while still allowing moist air to escape. Using the roof vent fan when showering or the stove vent fan when cooking also helps prevent excess moisture buildup.

CONVERTER—A device that converts 120 volt A/C (alternating current) to 12 volt DC (direct current). The RV devices mostly run on 12 volt DC power that is supplied by the battery, which allows the RV to function independently. When “shore power” (an electrical supply) is available, the converter changes the voltage from 120 to 12 volt to supply the appliances and to recharge the battery.

CURB WEIGHT—The actual weight of a vehicle or trailer, including all standard equipment, full fuel tanks, full fresh water tanks, full propane bottles, and all other equipment fluids, but before taking on any persons or personal cargo.

CURBSIDE—This refers to the side of the camper that faces the curb when parked. Also referred to as the door side or DS.

DC ELECTRICITY—Direct current also known as auxiliary battery power. For purposes of this owner’s manual, it refers to 12-volt DC (abbreviated 12 VDC).

DEALER—For purposes of this manual, this refers to the independent dealer authorized to sell and/or service your camper by Grand Design RV. This term will be used in this context unless specified otherwise.

DINETTE—Booth-like dining area. Table usually drops to convert unit into a bed at night.

DRAIN TRAP—This is the curve that is in all drains. Water is trapped in the curve and creates a barrier so tank odors cannot escape through the drain.

DRY CAMPING—Camping when there is no city water hookup or shore power (i.e., using only the water and power available in the camper and not from any other source).

DRY WEIGHT—The actual weight of a vehicle or trailer containing standard equipment without fuel, fluids, cargo, passengers, or optional equipment.

DSI (Direct Spark Ignition)—This term refers to the method of igniting the main burner on a propane fired appliance. The burner is lit with an electric spark and the flame is monitored by an electronic circuit board. This ignition system is used in refrigerators, furnaces and water heaters. There is now a version of stove tops that light the burners with a DSI ignition.

DUAL ELECTRICAL SYSTEM—RV equipped with lights, appliances which operate on 12-volt battery power when self-contained, and with a converter, on 110 AC current when in campgrounds or with an on-board generator

DUALLY—A truck having two wheels on each side of the rear axle for a total of four wheels

DUCTED A/C—Air conditioning supplied through a ducting system in the ceiling. This supplies cooling air at various vents located throughout the RV.

DUCTED HEAT—Warm air from the furnace supplied to various locations in the RV through a ducting system located in the floor. (Similar to house heating systems).

DUMP STATION—Site where you drain your gray water (waste) and your black water (sewage) tanks. In most states, it is illegal to drain your tanks anywhere except dump stations.

DUMP VALVE—Another name for the T-handle valve used to release and drain the black tank (sewage) and gray tank (waste).

EGRESS WINDOW—The formal name for the emergency escape window. Egress windows are identified by their labeling.

FIFTH WHEEL (FW)—A trailer and hitch configuration connected to the tow truck directly above the rear axle by way of a special fifth wheel hitch. This causes several feet of the connected trailer to hang over the tow truck, placing about 15 to 25% of the trailer's weight on the rear axle of the truck. Commercial trucks and trailers use this hitch configuration. Also commonly spelled as 5th wheel.

FIVER—Another name for a fifth wheel RV.

FRESH WATER—The fresh water system provides potable water to the fresh water tank, kitchen sink, shower, bathroom lavatory, toilet, water heater and outside shower.

FRESH WATER TANK—Tank for holding fresh water for drinking, cooking, and bathing while not connected to a city water supply.

FULL HOOK-UP SITE—A campsite that has city water, shore power and sewer hook-ups or connections available.

FULL TIMERS or FULL TIMING—The term used for people who live in their RV full time, or at least the vast majority of their time.

GALLEY—The kitchen in an RV.

GENERATOR—An engine powered device fueled by gasoline or diesel fuel, and sometimes propane, for generating 120-volt AC power.

GENSET—Abbreviation for generator set.

GOOSENECK—A trailer and hitch configuration connected to the tow truck directly above the rear axle by way of a standard ball hitch in the truck bed and a vertical, slender arm on front of the trailer. Gooseneck hitching is common on horse and utility trailers, but rarely found on RV's.

GRAY WATER—Term associated with the waste water holding tank. Water from the sink drains, shower and washer/dryer (if so equipped) go into this tank.

GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING (GAWR)—The MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WEIGHT each axle assembly is designed to carry, as measured at the tires, therefore including the weight of the axle assembly itself. GAWR is established by considering the rating of each of its components (tires, wheels, springs, axle), and rating the axle on its weakest link. The GAWR assumes that the LOAD IS EQUAL ON EACH SIDE.

GROSS CARRYING CAPACITY (GCC)—Means the maximum carrying capacity of your camper. The GCC is equal to the GVWR minus UVW. The GCC will be reduced by the weight of fresh water or other tanks, propane, occupants, personal items or dealer installed accessories.

GROSS COMBINED WEIGHT RATING (GCWR)—The MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE COMBINED WEIGHT of the tow vehicle and attached towed vehicle. GCWR assumes that both vehicles have functioning brakes, with exceptions in some cases for very light towed vehicles, normally less than 1,500 pounds. (Check your tow vehicle's towing guide.)

GROSS TRAILER WEIGHT RATING (GTWR)—The MAXIMUM TOWED VEHICLE WEIGHT. Each component (receiver, drawbar, ball) of a ball-type hitch has its own rating. Some ball-type hitches have separate ratings when used with a weight distributing system.

GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT RATING (GVWR)—The MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WEIGHT of the fully loaded vehicle, including liquids, passengers, cargo, and the tongue weight of any towed vehicle.

HEAT EXCHANGER—A device that transfers heat from one source to another. For example, there is a heat exchanger in your furnace - the propane flame and combustion products are contained inside the heat exchanger that is sealed from the inside area. Inside air is blown over the surface of the exchanger, where it is warmed and the blown through the ducting system for room heating. The combustion gases are vented to the outside air.

HEAT STRIP—A heat strip is an electric heating element located in the air conditioning system with the warm air distributed by the air conditioner fan and ducting system. They are typically 1500 watt elements (about the same wattage as an electric hair dryer) and have limited function. Basically they "take off the chill."

HIGH PROFILE—A fifth-wheel trailer with a higher-than-normal front to allow more than six (6) feet of standing room inside the raised area.

HITCH—The fastening unit that joins a movable vehicle to the vehicle that pulls it.

HITCH WEIGHT—The amount of the camper's weight that rests on the tow vehicle. It should be approximately 12 - 15% with conventional trailers; approximately 18 - 21% for fifth wheels.

HOLDING TANKS—There are three different holding tanks on most RVs; fresh water tank, gray water tank and black water tank. The fresh water tank holds fresh water that can be stored for later use. The gray water tank holds the waste water from the sinks and showers. The black water tank holds the waste from the toilet.

HONEY WAGON—Euphemism for the sewage pumping truck. Honey wagons are used to empty RV holding tanks in places where full hookups and dump stations are not available.

HOOKUPS—The ability of connecting to a campground's facilities. The major types of hookups are electrical, water and sewer. If all three of these hookups are available, it is termed full hookup. Hookups may also include telephone and cable TV in some campgrounds.

HOUSE BATTERY—One or more batteries in a RV for operating the 12 volt lights, appliances, and systems. House batteries can be 12 volt units tied in parallel or pairs of 6 volt batteries tied in series (to double the voltage). The term house battery is of more significance in motor homes because they contain one or more other batteries for the operation of the engine, referred to as the chassis or starting batteries.

HULA SKIRT—Term used for a type of dirt skirt accessory some RVers use on the back of their motorhome to aid in the protection from debris thrown from their rear wheels to the vehicles directly behind them or being towed behind them. This dirt skirt is usually the length of the rear bumper and resembles a 'short' version of a Hawaiian 'hula-skirt', hence the term.

INVERTER—An inverter is a device that changes 12 volt battery power to 120 volt AC power. It is used when "boon docking" (camping without hookups) to power certain 120 VAC only devices like a microwave oven. The amount of available power depends on the storage capacity of the batteries and the wattage rating of the inverter.

IRON RANGER—A fee collection box used at campgrounds that do not have full time attendants. Upon entrance to the campground, you deposit your nightly fee(s) in an envelope with your name and site number and drop this in the collection box. At sometime during the day, a park ranger will make rounds of the campgrounds and collect the fees. You will often see these in National Park and National Forest campgrounds.

ISLAND QUEEN /KING—A queen/king-sized bed with walking space on both sides.

JACKKNIFE—90˚ angle obtained from turning/backing fifth wheel or travel trailer with tow vehicle. Jackknifing a short bed truck towing a fifth wheel without the use of a slider hitch or extended fifth wheel pin box can result in damage to the truck cab or breaking out the back window of the truck cab from the truck and fifth wheel "colliding".

KING PIN—The pin by which a fifth wheel trailer attaches to the truck. It slides into the fifth wheel hitch and locks in place.

KING PIN WEIGHT—The actual weight pressing down on the fifth wheel hitch by the trailer. The recommended amount of King Pin Weight is 15%-25% of the GTW,also called Pin Weight.

LAMINATE—A sandwich of structural frame members, wall paneling, insulation and exterior covering, adhesive-bonded under pressure and/or heat to form the RV's walls, floor and/or roof.

LANDING GEARS—See Leveling Jack.

LEVELING—Positioning the RV in camp so it will be level, using ramps (also called levelers) placed under the wheels, built-in scissors jacks, or power leveling jacks.

LEVELING JACK—A jack lowered from the underside of trailers and motor homes for the purpose of leveling the vehicle. A leveling jack is designed to bear a significant portion of the RV's weight.

LP GAS—Liquefied Petroleum Gas, commonly written as "LP Gas". Two examples of LP Gas are propane and butane. LP Gas is heavier than air in gas form and about half the weight of water in liquid form. LP gas is used to fuel appliances in the RV, such as the stove, oven, water heater and refrigerator. Propane tanks are usually rated as pounds or gallons.

LOW POINT—The lowest point in the plumbing. Drains are placed here so that water will drain out of the lower end of the camper when flushing or winterizing the water system. These drains must be closed when you fill the water tank.

MOTORHOME (MH)—A motor vehicle built on a truck or bus chassis and designed to serve as self-contained living quarters for recreational travel.

NET CARRYING CAPACITY (NCC)—The MAXIMUM WEIGHT of all personal belongings, food, fresh water, propane, tools, dealer installed accessories, etc., that can be carried by the RV.

NON-POTABLE WATER—Water NOT suitable for human consumption.

OEM—An abbreviation of *Original Equipment Manufacturer,* usually refers to the individual appliances or components.

PARK MODEL—A travel trailer that requires park facilities to function. It lacks holding tanks and dual-voltage appliances, requiring to be plugged into water, sewage, and electrical facilities. A park model is more of a small mobile home than a recreational vehicle, in appearance and function.

PART TIMERS—The term used for people who use their RV more than usual (more than just a few weekend trips a year), but who still use it less than full time.

PATIO MAT—Carpet or woven mat for use on ground outside of RV. Used whether or not a concrete patio pad is available where camping.

PAYLOAD CAPACITY—The maximum allowable weight that can be placed in or on a vehicle, including cargo, passengers, fluids and fifth-wheel or conventional hitch loads.

PILOT—A pilot is a small standby flame that is used to light the main burner of a propane fired appliance when the thermostat calls for heat. Pilots can be used in furnaces, water heaters, refrigerators, ovens and stove tops.

PORPOISING—A term used to define the up and down motion in an RV while traveling

POWER SOURCE—Also referred to as shore power, this refers to the receptacle outlet you are using to plug in your shoreline power cord. This can be a campsite power box or electrical box, a residential receptacle outlet specifically wired for your camper or a generator (customer supplied).

PRIMITIVE SITE—A campsite that may have city water, shore power or sewer hook-ups but not all of them; primitive sites may have no hook-ups or connections at all.

PROPANE—LPG, or liquefied petroleum gas, used in RVs for heating, cooking and refrigeration. Also called bottle gas, for manner in which it is sold and stored. This is the proper term in the RV industry when referring to "LP Gas."

PULL-THROUGH SITES—Campsites you can drive through and park (without having to back up into the site).

REFER—Slang for "refrigerator". Refrigerators are often found in either a "two-way" or "three-way" operating mode. Two-way: has a gas mode and an AC mode. Three-way: has a gas mode, AC mode, and 12v DC mode. The coolant used in RV refrigeration is ammonia. The two most common manufacturers of RV refrigerators are Norcold and Dometic.

RIG—What many RVers call their units.

ROADSIDE – The side of the trailer that faces the road when it is parked. Also called the Streetside, Off-Door Side or ODS.

ROOF AIR CONDITIONING—Air conditioning unit mounted on roof of RV, to cool the RV when it is parked. When moving, most RVs are cooled by separate air conditioning units which are components of the engine, or they may be cooled by a roof top if a proper size generator is installed.

RV—Short for Recreation Vehicle, a generic term for all pleasure vehicles which contain living accommodations. Multiple units are RVs and persons using them are RVers.

RVDA—Abbreviation for Recreational Vehicle Dealer's Association.

RVIA—Abbreviation for Recreational Vehicle Industry Association

SELF CONTAINED—RV which needs no external electrical, drain or water hookup. Thus, it can park overnight anywhere. Of course, self-contained units can also hook up to facilities when at campgrounds.

SANITIZATION—Refers to the camper's fresh water system that has been sanitized with chlorine bleach before use or after storage.

SHORELINE POWER CORD—This is the electrical power cord that runs from the camper to the campsite shore power outlet.

SLEEPING CAPACITY WEIGHT RATING (SCWR)—The manufacturer's designated number of sleeping positions multiplied by 154 pounds (70 kilograms).

SLIDEOUT—A compartment added to an RV to increase interior space. It slides into the body during travel and slides out when parked.

SNOWBIRD—Term for someone in a northern climate that heads "south" in winter months.

STINKY SLINKY—Slang for the sewer hose, constructed from a spiral wire covered with vinyl. One end attaches to the RV piping and the other into the local sewer dump facilities

STREETSIDE – The side of the trailer that faces the street when parked. Also called the Roadside, Off-Door Side or ODS.

SURGE PROTECTOR—Device (customer supplied) that is installed at the power supply location designed to prevent "surges" or "spikes" in electrical current that may damage the RV's electrical/electronic components.

SWAY—Fishtailing action of the trailer caused by external forces that set the trailer's mass into a lateral (side-to-side) motion. The trailer's wheels serve as the axis or pivot point. Also known as "yaw."

THERMOCOUPLE—A thermocouple is a device that monitors the pilot flame of a pilot model propane appliance. If the pilot flame is extinguished the thermocouple causes the gas valve to shut off the flow of gas to both the pilot flame and the main burner.

TIP OUT—The term used for an area or room in an RV that tips out for additional living space. The Tip-Out was generally used in older RVs. Newer RVs mainly use a slide-out.

TIRE RATINGS—The MAXIMUM LOAD that a tire may carry is engraved on the sidewall, along with a corresponding COLD inflation pressure. A reduction in inflation pressure requires a reduction in load rating. Tire manufacturers publish charts that establish the load capacity at various inflation pressures.

TOE (WHEEL ALIGNMENT)—Toe is the measure of whether the front of the wheels (looking down from the top) are closer (toe-in) or farther (toe-out) than the back of the wheels.

TONGUE WEIGHT, TONGUE LOAD, VERTICAL LOAD (TWR/TLR/VLR)—Tongue Weight, Tongue Load, Vertical Load Rating Different terms for the MAXIMUM VERTICAL LOAD that can be carried by the hitch UNLOADED.

TRAILER BRAKES—Brakes that are built into the trailer axle systems and are activated either by electric impulse or by a surge mechanism. The overwhelming majority of RVs utilize electric trailer brakes that are actuated when the tow vehicle's brakes are operated, or when a brake controller is manually activated. Surge brakes utilize a mechanism that is positioned at the coupler, that detects when the tow vehicle is slowing or stopping, and activates the trailer brakes via a hydraulic system (typically used on boats).

TRAVEL TRAILER (TT)—Also referred to as "conventional trailers," these types of rigs have an A-frame and coupler and are attached to a ball mount on the tow vehicle. Travel trailers are available with one, two or three axles. Depending upon tow ratings, conventional trailers can be towed by trucks, cars or sport-utility vehicles.

UMBILICAL CORD—Wiring harness which connects the trailer to the tow vehicle during transport. The umbilical cord supplies the trailer with DC power for charging the batteries and operating DC equipment. It also operates the trailer brakes and signal lights. (Also referred to as the 7-way power cord.)

UNDERBELLY—The RV's under-floor surface, which is protected by a weatherproofed material.

UTQGL (UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADE LABELING)—A program that is directed by the government to provide consumers with information about three characteristics of the tire: tread wear, traction and temperature. Following government prescribed test procedures, tire manufacturers perform their own evaluations for these characteristics. Each manufacturer then labels the tire, according to grade.

UV DEGRADATION—A breaking down of material due to the sun's harsh ultraviolet rays.

UNLOADED VEHICLE WEIGHT (UVW)—The WEIGHT of a vehicle as built at the factory with full fuel, engine (generator) oil and coolants. It does not include cargo, fresh water, propane, occupants, or dealer installed accessories.

WALLY WORLD—Slang term used by RVers to describe a Wal-Mart.

WASTE WATER TANKS—The gray water tank holds the waste water from the sinks and showers. The black water tank holds the waste from the toilet.

WATER PRESSURE REGULATOR—Device (customer supplied) installed on the water hose attached to city water to limit the water pressure entering the RV. Most regulators limit water pressure to 40 psi.

WEEKENDERS—People who own their RV's for weekend and vacation use.

WEIGHT & LOAD—These terms are generally used interchangeably. For the purposes of understanding RV applications:

- Vehicles have WEIGHT, which impart LOADS to tires, axles and hitches.
- Scale measurements taken when weighing, are LOADS carried by the tires. The measured *LOADS* are used to calculate Gross Combination Weight (GCW) Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), Gross Axle Weight (GAW), and Hitch Loads.

WET WEIGHT—The weight of the vehicle with the fuel, freshwater and propane tanks full.

Note these important weights:

Propane	•	**4.25**	lbs. per gallon
Water	•	**8.3**	lbs. per gallon
Gasoline	•	**6.3**	lbs. per gallon
Diesel fuel	•	**6.6**	lbs. per gallon

WIDE BODY—An RV having an external body width greater than 96 inches (8 feet). The most common wide-body widths are 100” and 102.”

WINTERIZED—Refers to a camper that has been prepared for storage. The water systems have been drained and RV antifreeze has been added to protect the water lines and drains. The low point drains should be in the open position.

WORK CAMPER—A person living in an RV and working. Many spell it as “workamper” after the website and service by that name.

YAW—Fishtailing action of the trailer caused by external forces that set the trailer’s mass into a lateral (side-to-side) motion. The trailer’s wheels serve as the axis or pivot point. Also known as “sway.”

Index

7-Way Battery Power Control Box . . . 106
7-Way Wire Harness . . . 61
12-Volt DC System . . . 103
12-Volt Fuse Panel . . . 104
12-Volt Water Pump . . . 126
50-Amp Power Cord . . . 99-100
120-Volt AC System . . . 100
120-Volt Circuit Breakers . . . 101

A

ABS - Anti-Lock Braking System . . . 62
Air Quality . . . 32-33
Appliances . . . 161-162
Awning, Patio . . . 174-177
Awning, Slideout . . . 172

B

Battery Disconnect Switch . . . 106
Black/Grey Water Holding Tanks . . . 133
Black/Grey Water Systems . . . 132

C

Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning . . . 25
Cargo Carrying Capacity Label . . . 43
CCC (Cargo Carrying Capacity) . . . 42
Chemical Sensitivity & Outgassing . . . 34
Combination Carbon Monoxide (CO) / Propane (LP) Alarm . . . 26-30
Condensation . . . 35-36
Converter . . . 102

E

Electrical Load Ratings . . . 107
Electronics . . . 165-168
Emergency Egress Window . . . 23
Emergency Weather Planning . . . 20
Emptying the Black & Grey Water Tanks . . . 134
Exterior Care . . . 211
Exterior Vent with Locking Damper . . . 163

F • G

Federal Certification Label 43
Fifth Wheel Pin Box Hitch 64
Fire Extinguisher 22
Fire Safety 21
Formaldehyde 34
Fresh Water System 115
Fuel Station 190-193
Furniture, Converting Tri-Fold Sofa 188

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) 42
Generator - NPS 110-114
GFCI Receptacle 102
Grand Design Compass Connect® App 70, 115
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) 42

H • I

Heating & Cooling 169, 170
Hitching Procedure 65
Hitch Weight / Tongue Weight 42
Hydraulic System - Manual Override 181, 224-226

Interior Care 205

L • M

Leveling the RV 69, 70
Lippert Ground Control 3.0 System (G-Class) 93-98

Maintenance Checklist, Suggested 219
Maintenance Schedule, Required 220-221
Maximum Load Rating 45, 49
Monitor Panel 116-117

O • P

Occupant Safety 19
OneControl® Touch Panel 58

Patio Deck 197
Patio Railing System, Lippert 202
Patio Railing System, MORryde 200
Pet Safety 19
Propane Leak Test 155
Propane Regulator 157
Propane System 153

R

Ramp Door, Manual (G-Class) 196
Ramp Door, Zero-G 194
Roof 214
Roof Ladder 215
Roof Vents 214
RV Braking System 60
RV Length Label 44

S

Safety Precautions 4, 39-40
Sanitizing the Fresh Water System 130
Slideout Systems 178
- Electric (G-Class) 182
- Hydraulic Through Frame 180
- Schwintek In-Wall 184-185

Solar Power Charging System 109

T

Tire And Loading Information Label 43, 49
Tire Safety/Tire Maintenance 48-54
Toilet 132
TV Roof Antenna 167

U

Unhitching from a Tow Vehicle (G-Class) 96
Unhitching from the Tow Vehicle 68
UVW (Unloaded Vehicle Weight) 42

W

Warranty Service 9
Water Control System 126
Water Heater, Furrion Tankless 119-124, 232
- Pressure Safety Valve 125

Weighing Your Tow Vehicle & RV 46
Winterizing / RV Storage Preparation 106, 217
Winterizing the Plumbing System 120-122, 131, 148-150

Maintenance Record

Date :	Work Performed :	Next Service :

This page is intentionally blank.

Corporate Office
11333 County Road 2
Middlebury, IN 46540
USA

(574) 825-8000
www.granddesignrv.com

Copyright © 2024 Grand Design RV, All rights reserved.
Printed in the USA

Part # 961018
Rev. 01/2024